

تَسْهِيلُ النَّحْوِ

TASHEEL AL-NAHW

Version 2.2

تَسْهِيلُ النَّحْوِ

TASHEEL AL-NAHW

Version 2.2

based on

Ilm al-Nahw of Mawlana Mushtaq Ahmad Charthawali

Prepared by
Aamir Bashir

Copyright © Dār al-Sa‘ādah Publications 2011
First Online Edition Jul 2011
Second Online Edition Jul 2012
Version 2.1 Jan 2014
Version 2.2 Nov 2016

ilmresources.wordpress.com

*“General and unrestricted permission is granted for the unaltered
duplication, distribution, and transmission of this text.”*

In Plain English: Make as many copies as you want.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Table of Contents	i
List of Tables	vii
Acknowledgments	ix
Foreword	xi
الإصطلاحات العربية – Arabic Terms	xiii
CHAPTER 1	1
1.1. النَّحْوُ – Arabic Grammar	1
1.2. الْكَلِمَةُ – The word	2
إِسْمٌ – Noun	2
فِعْلٌ – Verb	3
حَرْفٌ – Particle	3
1.3	4
أَنْسَامُ الْإِسْمِ – Types of <i>ism</i>	4
أَنْسَامُ الْفِعْلِ – Types of <i>fi'l</i>	4
أَنْسَامُ الْحَرْفِ – Types of particle	4
1.4 الْجُمْلُ وَالْمُرَكَّبَاتُ – Sentences and phrases	6
1.4.1 أَنْسَامُ الْجُمْلَةِ الْحَبْرِيَّةِ	6
جُمْلَةٌ إِسْمِيَّةٌ حَبْرِيَّةٌ – Nominal sentence	6
جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ حَبْرِيَّةٌ – Verbal sentence	7
1.4.2 أَنْسَامُ الْجُمْلَةِ الْإِنْشَائِيَّةِ	8
1.4.3 أَنْسَامُ الْمُرَكَّبِ النَّاقِصِ – Types of phrases	9
1. الْمُرَكَّبُ التَّوْصِيفِيُّ – Descriptive phrase	9
2. الْمُرَكَّبُ الْإِضَائِيُّ – Possessive phrase	9
3. الْمُرَكَّبُ الْإِشَارِيُّ – Demonstrative phrase	10
4. الْمُرَكَّبُ الْبِنَائِيُّ / الْعَدْدِيُّ – Numerical phrase	10

5. الْمُرَكَّبُ مَنْعُ الصَّرْفِ – Indeclinable phrase	11
1.4.4 جُمْلَةٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ – Additional notes about	14
Summary	15
1.5	16
عَلَامَاتُ الْاِسْمِ – Signs of an <i>ism</i>	16
عَلَامَاتُ الْفِعْلِ – Signs of a <i>fi'l</i>	16
عَلَامَةُ الْحَرْفِ – Sign of a particle	16
1.5.1 General notes	17
1.6 اَلضَّمَائِرُ – Personal pronouns	19
1.7 اَلْحُرُوفُ اَلْجَارَةُ – Prepositions	20
1.8 اَلْحُرُوفُ اَلْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِالْفِعْلِ – Particles that resemble a <i>fi'l</i>	22
1.9 اَلْاَفْعَالُ اَلنَّاقِصَةُ – Auxiliary (defective) <i>fi'ls</i>	25
CHAPTER 2	27
اَلْمُعْرَبُ وَالْمَبْنِيُّ – Declinable and indeclinable words	
2.1	27
عَلَامَاتُ الْاِغْرَابِ – Signs of <i>i'raab</i>	27
حَالَاتُ الْمُعْرَبِ – Conditions of <i>mu'rab</i>	27
The difference between كَسْرٌ – فَتْحٌ – ضَمٌّ and كَسْرَةٌ – فَتْحَةٌ – ضَمَّةٌ	28
2.2 اَلْمَبْنِيُّ – The indeclinable word	29
اَلْاِغْرَابُ اَلْمَحَلِّيُّ	30
2.3 اَلْمُعْرَبُ – The declinable word	31
2.4 اَقْسَامُ الْاَسْمَاءِ الْمَبْنِيَّةِ – Types of indeclinable <i>isms</i>	32
2.4.1 اَلضَّمَائِرُ – Personal pronouns	33
2.4.2 اَلْاَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْصُولَةُ – Relative pronouns	39
2.4.3 اَسْمَاءُ الْاِشَارَةِ – Demonstrative <i>isms</i>	42
2.4.4 اَسْمَاءُ الْاَفْعَالِ – <i>Isms</i> that have the meaning of <i>fi'ls</i>	45
2.4.5 اَسْمَاءُ الْاَصْوَاتِ – <i>Isms</i> that denote a sound	46

2.4.6	الظُّرُوفُ – Adverbs	47
	ظُرُوفُ الزَّمَانِ – Adverbs of time	47
	ظُرُوفُ الْمَكَانِ – Adverbs of place	49
2.4.7	الْكِنَايَاتُ – <i>Isms</i> that indicate an unspecified quantity	52
2.4.8	الْمُرَكَّبُ الْبِنَائِيُّ – Numerical phrase	52
2.5	أَفْسَامُ الْأَسْمَاءِ الْمُعْرَبَةِ – Types of declinable <i>isms</i>	53
	مُنْصَرَفٌ	53
	عَيْزٌ مُنْصَرَفٌ	53
	أَسْبَابُ مَنَعَ الصَّرْفِ	53
2.6	إِعْرَابُ أَفْسَامِ الْأَسْمَاءِ الْمُعْرَبَةِ – <i>I'raab</i> of the various types of <i>mu'rab isms</i>	58
CHAPTER 3		61
Further Discussion of <i>Isms</i>		
3.1	الْإِسْمُ الْمُنْسُوبُ – Relative adjective	61
3.2	الْإِسْمُ التَّصْغِيرُ – Diminutive <i>ism</i>	63
3.3	الْمَعْرِفَةُ وَالنَّكْرَةُ – Definite and indefinite <i>isms</i>	64
3.4	الْإِسْمُ الْمَذَكَّرُ وَالْمُؤَنَّثُ – Masculine and feminine <i>isms</i>	65
3.5	وَاحِدٌ وَتَنْبِيْهُ وَجَمْعٌ – Singular, dual and plural	67
3.6	أَفْسَامُ الْجُمُعِ – Types of plural	68
3.7	الْمَرْفُوعَاتُ – Words that are always <i>marfoo'</i>	73
3.7.1	فَاعِلٌ – Subject/Doer	73
3.7.2	مَفْعُولٌ مَأْمُومٌ يُسَمَّى فَاعِلُهُ / نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ – Substitute of فَاعِلٌ	75
3.7.3	إِسْمٌ مَا وَلَا الْمَشَبَّهَتَيْنِ بِ لَيْسَ – The <i>ism</i> of those مَا and لَا which are similar to لَيْسَ	76
3.7.4	حَبْرٌ لَا الَّتِي لِنَفْيِ الْجِنْسِ – The حَبْرٌ of that لَا which negates an entire جنسٌ (Class)	77
3.8	الْمَنْصُوبَاتُ – Words that are always <i>mansoob</i>	79
3.8.1	مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ – Object	79

3.8.2	مَفْعُولٌ مُطْلَقٌ	81
3.8.3	مَفْعُولٌ لِأَجْلِهِ / مَفْعُولٌ لَهُ	81
3.8.4	مَفْعُولٌ مَعَهُ	81
3.8.5	ظَرَفٌ / مَفْعُولٌ فِيهِ	82
3.8.6	حَالٌ – State/Condition	84
3.8.7	تَمَيِّزٌ / تَمَيِّزٌ	87
	Rules for أَسْمَاءُ الْعَدَدِ (numerals)	88
3.8.8	مُسْتَثْنَى	92
3.9	أَلْمَجْرُورَاتُ – Words that are always <i>majroor</i>	95
3.10	التَّوَابِعُ	96
3.10.1	التَّعْتُّ أَوْ الصِّفَةُ – Adjective	96
3.10.2	التَّأَكِيدُ – Emphasis	100
3.10.3	الْبَدَلُ – Substitute	103
3.10.4	أَلْعَطْفُ بِحَرْفٍ / عَطْفُ النَّسِقِ – Conjunction	105
	حُرُوفُ الْعَطْفِ	105
3.10.5	عَطْفُ الْبَيَانِ	108
CHAPTER 4		109
أَلْعَوَامِلُ – Governing Words		
4.1	أَلْحُرُوفُ الْعَامِلَةُ – Governing particles	110
	Particles that govern <i>isms</i>	110
	Particles that govern فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ	110
4.1.1	أَلْحُرُوفُ النَّاصِبَةُ – Particles that cause <i>nasb</i>	111
4.1.2	أَلْحُرُوفُ الْجَازِمَةُ – Particles that cause <i>jazm</i>	114
4.2	أَلْأَفْعَالُ الْعَامِلَةُ – Governing <i>fi'ls</i>	116
4.2.1	أَلْفِعْلُ الْمَعْرُوفُ – Active <i>fi'l</i>	116
4.2.2	أَلْفِعْلُ الْمَجْهُولُ – Passive <i>fi'l</i>	116
4.2.3	أَلْفِعْلُ اللَّازِمُ – Intransitive <i>fi'l</i>	116

4.2.4	أَلْفَعَالُ النَّاقِصَةُ	116
4.2.5	أَلْفِعْلُ الْمَتَعَدِّي – Transitive <i>fi'l</i>	117
4.2.6	أَفْعَالُ الْمُقَارَبَةِ وَالرَّجَاءِ وَالشُّرُوعِ	119
4.2.7	أَفْعَالُ الْمَدْحِ وَالذَّمِّ – <i>Fi'ls</i> of praise and blame	121
4.2.8	أَفْعَالُ التَّعْجُوبِ – <i>Fi'ls</i> of wonder	123
4.3	أَلْأَسْمَاءُ الْعَامِلَةُ – Governing <i>isms</i>	124
4.3.1	أَلْأَسْمَاءُ الشَّرْطِيَّةُ – Conditional <i>isms</i>	124
4.3.2	إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ	126
4.3.2.1	إِسْمُ الْمُبَالِغَةِ	127
4.3.3	إِسْمُ الْمَفْعُولِ	129
4.3.4	أَلصِّفَةُ الْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِاسْمِ الْفَاعِلِ – An adjective similar to إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ	130
4.3.5	إِسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ	132
4.3.6	أَلْمَصْنَدُ	134
4.3.7	أَلْمُضَافُ	135
4.3.8	أَلْإِسْمُ التَّامُّ	135
4.3.9	أَلْكِنَايَاتُ	136
4.4	أَلْحُرُوفُ الْعَيْرِ الْعَامِلَةُ – Non-governing particles	137
1.	أَلْحُرُوفُ التَّنْبِيهِ – Particles of notification	137
2.	أَلْحُرُوفُ الْإِيجَابِ – Particles of affirmation	137
3.	أَلْحُرُوفُ التَّفْسِيرِ – Particles of clarification	138
4.	أَلْحُرُوفُ الْمَصْنَدِيَّةِ	138
5.	أَلْحُرُوفُ التَّحْضِيضِ – Particles of exhortation	138
6.	أَلْحُرُوفُ التَّوَقُّعِ – Particle of anticipation	139
7.	أَلْحُرُوفُ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِ – Particles of interrogation	139
8.	أَلْحُرُوفُ الرَّدْعِ – Particle of rebuke	140
9.	أَلتَّنْوِينُ	140
10.	أَلنُّونُ التَّأْكِيدِ	140

11. حَرْفُ لَ	140
12. الحُرُوفُ الزَّائِدَةُ – Extra particles	141
13. حُرُوفُ الشَّرْطِ الَّتِي لَا تَجْزِمُ – Conditional particles that do not cause <i>jazm</i>	142
14. مَا (مَا دَامَ)	143
15. حُرُوفُ العَطْفِ	143
Appendix	145
Bibliography	149

LIST OF TABLES

Table No		Page No
1.1	الضَّمائِرُ – Personal pronouns	19
1.2	أَحْرُوفُ الجَّارَةِ – Prepositions	20
1.3	أَحْرُوفُ المُشَبَّهَةِ بِالفِعْلِ – Particles that resemble a <i>fi' l</i>	22
1.4	الأَفْعَالُ النَّاقِصَةُ – Auxiliary (defective) <i>fi' ls</i>	25
2.1	ضَمِيرٌ مَرْفُوعٌ مُتَّصِلٌ (ضَمِيرٌ مَرْفُوعٌ مُتَّصِلٌ) حَالَةُ الرَّفْعِ in ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ بَارِزٌ	34
2.2	ضَمِيرٌ مَرْفُوعٌ مُتَّصِلٌ (ضَمِيرٌ مَرْفُوعٌ مُتَّصِلٌ) حَالَةُ الرَّفْعِ in ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ	35
2.3	ضَمِيرٌ مَنْصُوبٌ مُتَّصِلٌ وَضَمِيرٌ (ضَمِيرٌ مَنْصُوبٌ مُتَّصِلٌ) حَالَةُ النَّصْبِ in ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ and ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ (مَنْصُوبٌ مُتَّصِلٌ)	36
2.4	ضَمِيرٌ مَجْرُورٌ مُتَّصِلٌ (ضَمِيرٌ مَجْرُورٌ مُتَّصِلٌ) حَالَةُ الجَرِّ in ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ بَارِزٌ	37
2.5	الأَسْمَاءُ المَوْصُولَةُ لِلْمُدَّكَّرِ	39
2.6	الأَسْمَاءُ المَوْصُولَةُ لِلْمُؤَنَّثِ	39
2.7	أَسْمَاءُ الإِشَارَةِ لِلْمُدَّكَّرِ	42
2.8	أَسْمَاءُ الإِشَارَةِ لِلْمُؤَنَّثِ	42
2.9	الْفِعْلُ المَاضِي في <i>Isms</i>	45
2.10	الْفِعْلُ الحَاضِرُ في <i>Isms</i>	45
2.11	إِعْرَابُ أَقْسَامِ الأَسْمَاءِ المُعْرَبَةِ	59
3.1	أَوْزَانُ جَمْعِ قِلَّةٍ	69
3.2	أَوْزَانُ جَمْعِ كَثْرَةٍ	69
3.3	أَمْثَالُ جَمْعِ الجُمُوعِ	70
3.4	أَوْزَانُ مُنْتَهَى الجُمُوعِ	70
3.5	إِسْتِعْمَالُ الفِعْلِ حَسَبَ الفَاعِلِ	73
3.6	Different forms of the <i>isms</i> of لا and its <i>i'raab</i>	77
3.7	Rules governing the <i>i'raab</i> of مُنَادَى	80

3.8	إِعْرَابُ الْمُسْتَثْنَى	93
4.1	الْحُرُوفُ النَّاصِبَةُ	111
4.2	الْحُرُوفُ الْجَائِزَةُ	114
4.3	أَفْعَالُ الْقُلُوبِ	117
4.4	مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ <i>Fi 'ls</i> requiring three	118
4.5	أَفْعَالُ الْمُقَارَبَةِ وَالرَّجَاءِ وَالشُّرُوعِ	119
4.6	الْأَسْمَاءُ الشَّرْطِيَّةُ	124
4.7	أَوْزَانُ إِسْمِ الْمُبَالَغَةِ	127
4.8	أَوْزَانُ الصِّفَةِ الْمُشَبَّهَةِ	130
4.9	أَوْزَانُ إِسْمِ التَّفْضِيلِ	132

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The people who have helped to make this project a success cannot all be mentioned by name. However, I must single out Sr. A. Naviwala who typed up the old *Tasbeel al-Nabw*, and thus helped to kick-start the project; the students and instructors at Darul Uloom al-Madania's eAlim program; First year students at Darul Uloom al-Madania (academic years 2010–2011 and 2011–2012); and Mawlana Omar Salejee of Madrasa In'amiyya South Africa. I have greatly benefitted from their valuable feedback and suggestions and help with proof-reading. May Allah reward them, and all others for their contributions and help.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ
نُحْمَدُهٗ وَنُصَلِّیْ عَلٰی رَسُوْلِهِ الْكَرِیْمِ

FOREWORD

This is version 2.2 of the revised *Tasheel al-Nahw*, which in turn is an expanded translation of the Urdu language primer of Arabic grammar, *Ilm al-Nahw* by Mawlana Mushtaq Ahmad Charthawali. Mawlana Charthawali's primers for *Nahw* (Arabic grammar) and *Sarf* (Arabic Morphology) are standard textbooks in Western *madrasahs*. The original English translation of *Ilm al-Nahw* titled *Tasheel al-Nahw* was prepared by scholars from Madrasah Islamiyyah, Benoni, South Africa. As great as that effort was, it suffered from several issues especially with regards to language and clarity of the English and Arabic texts. In 2010, I decided to bring out a revised edition of this translation to address these issues. During the course of this revision, I consulted various grammar works including *al-Nahw al-Wadih*, *Sharh ibn 'Aqil*, *Mu'jam al-Qawa'id al-'Arabiyyah*, and *A Simplified Arabic Grammar*. I completely revised some sections, as well as a number of definitions. I also changed the organization in a way that I felt would make it easier for students to understand how each section fits in the overall picture.

Since then, I have had a chance to teach this book many times and every such occasion has led to further revisions and improvements. This latest version is vastly different from the original edition that I published online in 2011. Many sections have been modified, some have been completely revised, confusing sentences have been elaborated, more examples and exercises have been added, including many from *al-Nahw al-Wadih* and *Mu'allim al-Insha'*, and where needed, the relevant *al-Nahw al-Wadih* section has been pointed out in the footnotes. These footnotes are for the benefit of the teachers. The students can choose to ignore them. Lastly, an appendix has been attached at the end, identifying *Tasheel al-Nahw's* place in *Nahw* texts, as well as suggesting a possible curriculum of classical Arabic studies.

This is a beginner-to-intermediate level text; therefore, I have not transliterated Arabic words exactly, keeping in mind that most people at this stage will not be comfortable with Arabic transliteration schemes. Rather, I have used approximate equivalents that are easier to read for the untrained. Nevertheless, non-English words have been italicized to reflect their non-English origin. The documentation in the foot-notes does not follow any particular academic standard; rather, it has been kept simple for ease of students. It should also be noted that the English equivalents of Arabic grammar terms are mere approximations. In some cases, they convey the exact meaning. In many cases, they do not. The student is, therefore, urged to focus on the original term in Arabic.

I would also like to point out that this is not a do-it-yourself text. First of all, it assumes some prior knowledge of Arabic such as that acquired through studying *Ten Lessons of Arabic* and/or *Durus al-Lughah al-'Arabiyyah* vol. 1. Moreover, it needs to be studied with a teacher.

However, it can be used as a revision text by those who have already studied *Nahw* using other texts. It is respectfully suggested to the teachers of this text to also use *al-Nahw al-Wadih* (all six volumes) as reference and for additional examples and exercises, as and when needed. Moreover, it should also be pointed out that this is not an exhaustive text. It does not cover every issue of *Nahw*, in brief or in detail. It is assumed that the student will be studying relatively advanced *Nahw* texts (such as *Hidayat al-Nahw* or *al-Nahw al-Wadih*) after this to round off his/her training of *Nahw*. The sample curriculum given in the appendix can be used for that purpose.

To the best of my ability, I have tried to remove all errors. However, as is the case with all human endeavors, there are bound to be some mistakes in it, and definitely, room for improvement. Your comments, constructive criticism, and suggestions are all welcome. You can contact me with your feedback at the email address given at the end.

I hope and pray that this latest version will be of benefit to the students. I also pray that Allah Most High accepts this humble effort from all those who have contributed to it in any way, and gives us the power to continue with more. I also request the readers and all those who benefit from it in any way to remember me in their prayers.

And He alone gives success.

وَصَلَّى اللهُ تَعَالَى عَلَيَّ خَيْرَ خَلْقِهِ سَيِّدِنَا وَمَوْلَانَا مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَىٰ آلِهِ وَأَصْحَابِهِ أَجْمَعِينَ

Aamir Bashir

Chicago, IL

26th Safar, 1438 (26th November, 2016)

E-mail: ainbay97@gmail.com

الإِصْطِلَاحَاتُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ
ARABIC TERMS

Arabic Term	Approximate Transliteration	Equivalent English Term / Description of the meaning
إِسْمٌ	<i>ism</i>	Noun
فِعْلٌ	<i>fi'l</i>	Verb
حَرْفٌ	<i>harf</i>	Particle
مُذَكَّرٌ	<i>mudhakkar</i>	Masculine
مُؤَنَّثٌ	<i>mu'annath</i>	Feminine
وَاحِدٌ	<i>waahid</i>	Singular
تَنْثِيَةٌ	<i>tathniyah</i>	Dual
جَمْعٌ	<i>jam'</i>	Plural
ضَمَّةٌ	<i>dammah</i>	◌ُ
فَتْحَةٌ	<i>fathah</i>	◌َ
كَسْرَةٌ	<i>kasrah</i>	◌ِ
حَرَكَةٌ جَمْعٌ: حَرَكَاتٌ	<i>harakah</i> <i>plural: harakaat</i>	Short vowels, i.e., <i>dammah</i> ◌ُ, <i>fathah</i> ◌َ, <i>kasrah</i> ◌ِ
حُرُوفُ الْعِلَّةِ	<i>huroof al-'illah</i>	Long vowels i.e., و - ا - ي
إِغْرَابٌ	<i>i'raab</i>	These are the variations at the end of the word which take place in accordance with the governing word.
تَنْوِينٌ	<i>tanween</i>	two <i>fathahs</i> (◌َ◌َ), two <i>dammahs</i> (◌ُ◌ُ), two <i>kasrahs</i> (◌ِ◌ِ)
سُكُونٌ	<i>sukoon</i>	◌ْ
سَاكِنٌ	<i>saakin</i>	A letter with <i>sukoon</i>
تَشْدِيدٌ	<i>tashdeed</i>	◌ّ
مُشَدَّدٌ	<i>mushaddad</i>	A letter with <i>tashdeed</i>
فَاعِلٌ	<i>faa'il</i>	Subject i.e. the doer
مَفْعُولٌ	<i>mafool</i>	Object i.e. the person or thing upon whom or which the work is done.
عَامِلٌ	<i>'aamil</i>	Governing word i.e. a word which causes <i>i'raab</i> change in the word(s) following it.

Arabic Term	Approximate Transliteration	Equivalent English Term / Description of the meaning
مَعْمُولٌ	<i>ma'mool</i>	The governed word i.e. a word in which the <i>i'raab</i> change occurred.
فِعْلٌ مَعْرُوفٌ	<i>fi'l ma'roof</i>	The active verb i.e. a verb whose doer is known/mentioned.
فِعْلٌ مَجْهُولٌ	<i>fi'l majhool</i>	The passive verb i.e. a verb whose doer is not known/mentioned.
فِعْلٌ لَازِمٌ	<i>fi'l laazim</i>	The intransitive verb i.e. a verb which can be understood without a مَفْعُولٌ.
الْفِعْلُ الْمُتَعَدِّي	<i>fi'l muta'addi</i>	The transitive verb i.e. a verb which cannot be fully understood without a مَفْعُولٌ.
مَعْرِفَةٌ	<i>ma'rifah</i>	Definite noun. It is generally indicated by an ال. For example, <u>الْبَيْتُ</u> the house (a particular/specific house).
نَكِرَةٌ	<i>nakirah</i>	Indefinite noun. It is generally indicated by a <i>tanween</i> . e.g. <u>بَيْتٌ</u> a house (any house).
مَرْفُوعٌ	<i>marfoo'</i>	It is a word which is in the state of رَفْعٌ. It is generally represented by a <i>dammah</i> on the last letter.
مَنْصُوبٌ	<i>mansoob</i>	It is a word which is in the state of نَصْبٌ. It is generally represented by a <i>fathah</i> on the last letter.
مَجْرُورٌ	<i>majroor</i>	It is a word which is in the state of جَرٌّ. It is generally represented by a <i>kasrah</i> on the last letter.

CHAPTER 1

Section 1.1

النَّحْوُ – Arabic Grammar

Definition:

Nahw is a science, which teaches us how to join a noun, verb or particle to form a correct sentence, as well as what the إعرابٌ (condition) of the last letter of a word should be.

Subject Matter:

Its subject matter is كَلِمَةٌ (word) and كَلَامٌ (sentence).

Objective:

- The immediate objective is to learn how to read, write and speak Arabic correctly, and to avoid making mistakes in this. For example, زَيْدٌ, دَارٌ, دَخَلَ, and فِي are four words. The science of *Nahw* teaches us how to put them together to form a correct sentence.
- The mid-term objective is to use our Arabic skills to understand the *Qur'an*, *Hadeeth*, *Fiqh* and other Islamic sciences, so that we can act upon them.
- The ultimate objective through the above is to gain the pleasure of Allah Most High.

Section 1.2

الكَلِمَةُ – The word

Any word uttered by humans is called a لَفْظٌ. If it has a meaning, it is called مَوْضُوعٌ (meaningful); and if it does not have any meaning, it is called مُهْمَلٌ (meaningless).

In Arabic, لَفْظٌ مَوْضُوعٌ (meaningful word) is of two types: مُفْرَدٌ and مُرَكَّبٌ.

1. مُفْرَدٌ – Single: It is a single word such as كِتَابٌ (book). Such a word is also called كَلِمَةٌ.
2. مُرَكَّبٌ – Compound: It is a group of two or more words, which may form a complete or an incomplete sentence such as طَالِبٌ ذَكِيٌّ (intelligent student) or الطَّالِبُ ذَكِيٌّ (The student is intelligent.).

Types of كَلِمَةٌ

There are three types of كَلِمَةٌ:

1. اِسْمٌ (noun)
2. فِعْلٌ (verb)
3. حَرْفٌ (particle)

اِسْمٌ – Noun:

- Classical definition: It is a كَلِمَةٌ whose meaning can be understood without the need to combine it with another word, and it does not have a tense.¹
- Modern definition: It is the name of a person, place or thing.²

Examples: رَجُلٌ a man
الْبَيْتُ the house

Notes:

- Since this textbook is designed for classical Arabic; therefore, throughout the rest of the book, اِسْمٌ will be used in the sense of its classical definition.
- An اِسْمٌ can never have a تَنْوِينٌ (*tanween*) and an ال at the same time.

¹ Ibn 'Aqil expresses this as follows: اَلْكَلِمَةُ اِنْ دَلَّتْ عَلٰى مَعْنٰى فِيْ نَفْسِهَا غَيْرَ مُفْتَرِنٍ بِرَمَانٍ فِيْهَا اِسْمٌ. See 'Abdullah ibn 'Aqil, *Sharh ibn 'Aqil 'ala Alfyyat ibn Malik* (Cairo: Dar al-Turath, 1980), vol. 1, 15.

² This is the definition given in *al-Nahw al-Wadiah*. The Arabic reads: اَلْاِسْمُ: كُلُّ لَفْظٍ يُسَمَّى بِهٖ اِنْسَانًا اَوْ حَيَوَانًا اَوْ نَبَاتًا اَوْ جِمَادًا اَوْ اَيُّ شَيْءٍ اٰخَرَ. See 'Ali al-Jaarim & Mustafa Ameen, *al-Nahw al-Wadiah li al-Madaris al-Ibtida'iyyah* (Cairo: Dar al-Ma'arif, n.d.), vol. 1, 16.

فِعْلٌ – Verb:

- Classical definition: It is a كَلِمَةٌ whose meaning can be understood without the need to combine it with another word, and it has one of the three tenses: past, present, or future.³
- Modern definition: It denotes an action.⁴

Examples: ضَرَبَ He hit. نَصَرَ He helped.

Notes:

- Since this textbook is designed for classical Arabic; therefore, throughout the rest of the book, فِعْلٌ will be used in the sense of its classical definition.
- A فِعْلٌ can never have a تَنْوِينٌ (*tanween*) or an ال.

حَرْفٌ – Particle:

It is a كَلِمَةٌ whose meaning cannot be understood without joining an اِسْمٌ or a فِعْلٌ or both to it.

e.g. مِنْ (from)
 عَلَى (on top)

EXERCISES

1. State with reason whether the following words are اِسْمٌ ، فِعْلٌ or حَرْفٌ.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| i. جَلَسَ (He sat.) | iii. بِنْتٌ (girl) |
| ii. وَ (and) | iv. كَسَرَ (He broke.) |

2. Find the meaning and the plural of the following اَسْمَاءٌ using a dictionary.

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| i. قَلَمٌ | iii. كِتَابٌ |
| ii. فَصْلٌ | iv. سُبُورَةٌ |

³ See *Sharh ibn 'Aqil*, vol. 1, 15.

⁴ See *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 1, 16.

Section 1.3

أقسامُ الإِسْمِ – Types of *ism*

إِسْمٌ is of three types:

1. جَامِدٌ – Primary *ism*: It is an إِسْمٌ which is neither derived from another word nor is any word derived from it.

e.g. فَرَسٌ horse بِنْتٌ girl

2. مَصْدَرٌ – Root *ism*: It is an إِسْمٌ from which many words are derived.

e.g. ضَرَبٌ to hit نَصَرَ to help

3. مُشْتَقٌّ – Derived *ism*: It is an إِسْمٌ which is derived from a مَصْدَرٌ.

e.g. ضَارِبٌ hitter مَنْصُورٌ one who is helped

أقسامُ الفِعْلِ – Types of *fi'l*

فِعْلٌ is of four types:

1. الْمَاضِي Past tense e.g. ضَرَبَ He hit.
2. الْمُضَارِعُ Present and Future tense e.g. يَضْرِبُ He is hitting or will hit.
3. الْأَمْرُ Positive Command/
Imperative e.g. اِضْرِبْ Hit!
4. النَّهْيُ Negative Command/
Prohibitive e.g. لَا تَضْرِبْ Don't hit!

أقسامُ الحَرْفِ – Types of particle

حَرْفٌ is of two types:

1. عَامِلٌ – Causative Particle: It is a حَرْفٌ which causes إِعْرَابٌ change in the word after it.

e.g. زَيْدٌ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ Zayd is in the mosque.

2. غَيْرُ الْعَامِلِ – Non-Causative: It is a حَرْفٌ which does not cause إِعْرَابٌ change in the word after it.

e.g. ثُمَّ then وَ and

EXERCISES

1. Correct the following words (stating a reason) and give their meanings.

i. أَلْبَيْتُ

iii. أَلْوَرَقُ

ii. أَلْفَتَحَ

iv. سَمِعَ

2. Find the meanings and the plurals of the following *isms* using a dictionary.

i. بُسْتَانٌ

iii. بَابٌ

ii. قَمَرٌ

iv. كَلْبٌ

3. Translate the following sentences, and identify the different types of *fi'ls* in them.

i. فَتَحَ خَالِدٌ الشُّبَّانَ

iii. أُكْتُبُ رِسَالَةً

ii. يَدْرُسُ أَحْمَدُ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ

iv. لَا تَقْرَأُ ذَلِكَ الْكِتَابَ

Section 1.4

الْجُمَلُ وَالْمُرَكَّبَاتُ – Sentences and phrases

مُرَكَّبٌ is of two types: مُرَكَّبٌ مُفِيدٌ and مُرَكَّبٌ عَيْزٌ مُفِيدٌ.

- مُرَكَّبٌ مُفِيدٌ is also called مُرَكَّبٌ تَامٌ, جُمْلَةٌ مُفِيدَةٌ, and كَلَامٌ تَامٌ. It is a complete sentence. Often, it is just called كَلَامٌ.
- مُرَكَّبٌ عَيْزٌ مُفِيدٌ is also called مُرَكَّبٌ نَاقِصٌ, جُمْلَةٌ عَيْزٌ مُفِيدَةٌ, and كَلَامٌ نَاقِصٌ. It is an incomplete sentence.

From now on, when I use “sentence,” I will be referring to a complete sentence; and when I use “phrase,” I will be referring to an incomplete sentence.

Types of sentences

There are two types of sentences:

- A. جُمْلَةٌ خَبَرِيَّةٌ: It is a sentence which has the possibility of being true or false.
- B. جُمْلَةٌ اِنْشَائِيَّةٌ: It is a sentence which does not have the possibility of being true or false.

Section 1.4.1

أَنْسَامُ الْجُمْلَةِ الْخَبَرِيَّةِ

جُمْلَةٌ خَبَرِيَّةٌ is of two types:

1. جُمْلَةٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ خَبَرِيَّةٌ – Nominal sentence:

Definition: It is a sentence which begins with an اِسْمٌ.

- The second part of the sentence can be an اِسْمٌ or a فِعْلٌ.
- The first part of the sentence is called مُبْتَدَأٌ (subject) or مُسْنَدٌ اِلَيْهِ (the word about which information is being given).
- The second part of the sentence is called خَبْرٌ (predicate) or مُسْنَدٌ (the word giving the information).
- The مُبْتَدَأٌ is generally مَعْرِفَةٌ and the خَبْرٌ generally نَكْرَةٌ.
- Both parts (مُبْتَدَأٌ and خَبْرٌ) are مَرْفُوعٌ.

Sentence Analysis

$$\text{جُمْلَةٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ خَبَرِيَّةٌ} = \text{مُبْتَدَأٌ} + \text{خَبْرٌ} \quad \text{نَظِيفٌ} \quad \text{اَلْبَيْتُ} \quad \text{The house is clean.}$$

Note: A sentence may have more than one خَبْرٌ.

Sentence Analysis

الرَّجُلُ طَوِيلٌ قَوِيٌّ The man is tall and strong.
جُمْلَةٌ إِسْمِيَّةٌ خَبْرِيَّةٌ = 2 خَبْرٌ + 1 خَبْرٌ + مُبْتَدَأٌ

2. جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ خَبْرِيَّةٌ – Verbal sentence:

Definition: It is a sentence which begins with a فِعْلٌ.

- The first part of the sentence is called فِعْلٌ or مُسْنَدٌ.
- The second part of the sentence is called فَاعِلٌ or مُسْنَدٌ إِلَيْهِ and is always مَرْفُوعٌ.

Sentence Analysis

زَيْدٌ جَلَسَ Zayd sat.
جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ خَبْرِيَّةٌ = فَاعِلٌ + فِعْلٌ

Note: In the above example, the فِعْلٌ is الْفِعْلُ اللَّارِئُ i.e. it is a فِعْلٌ whose meaning can be understood without a مَفْعُولٌ.

Note: If the فِعْلٌ is الْفِعْلُ الْمُتَعَدِّي i.e. a فِعْلٌ whose meaning cannot be fully understood without a مَفْعُولٌ, then a مَفْعُولٌ will be added and it will be مَنْصُوبٌ.

Sentence Analysis

خَلَقَ اللهُ السَّمَاءَ Allah created the sky.
جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ خَبْرِيَّةٌ = مَفْعُولٌ + فَاعِلٌ + فِعْلٌ

EXERCISES⁵

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab*, and analyze the following sentences.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| i. المعلم حاضر | ii. البستان جميل | iii. فتح محمدن الباب |
| iv. المدرسة كبيرة نظيفة | v. وقف الرجل | vi. الرجل وقف |

2. What is the difference between (v) and (vi) above?

⁵ For more examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 1, 11-19 & 36-46.

Section 1.4.2

جُمْلَةٌ إِنْشَائِيَّةٌ is of ten types:

- | | | | | |
|----|------------------|------------------|--|---|
| 1. | الأَمْرُ | Positive Command | e.g. اِضْرِبْ | Hit! |
| 2. | النَّهْيُ | Negative Command | e.g. لَا تَضْرِبْ | Don't Hit! |
| 3. | الْإِسْتِفْهَامُ | Interrogative | e.g. هَلْ ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ؟ | Did Zayd hit? |
| 4. | التَّمَنِّيُّ | Desire | e.g. لَيْتَ الشَّبَابَ عَائِدًا! | I wish youth would return. |
| 5. | الترجِّيُّ | Hope | e.g. لَعَلَّ الإِمْتِحَانَ سَهْلٌ | Hopefully, the examination will be easy. |
| 6. | التَّهْلُوتُ | Exclamation | e.g. يَا اللَّهُ! | O Allah! |
| 7. | العَرْضُ | Request/Offer | e.g. أَلَا تَأْتِينِي فَأَعْطِيكَ دِينَارًا؟ | Will you not come to me so that I may give you a <i>dinar</i> ? |

Note: لَيْتَ is generally used for something unattainable.

Note: لَعَلَّ is generally used for something attainable.

Note: العَرْضُ is a mere request; no answer is anticipated.

- | | | | | |
|-----|-------------|-------------|---|-------------------|
| 8. | القَسَمُ | Oath | e.g. وَاللَّهِ! | By Allah! |
| 9. | التَّعْجُبُ | Amazement | e.g. مَا أَحْسَنَ زَيْدًا! | How good Zayd is! |
| 10. | العُقُودُ | Transaction | e.g. The seller says هَذَا الْكِتَابُ بَعْتُ – I sold this book.
and the buyer says اشْتَرَيْتُهُ – I bought it. | |

Note: The sentences for العُقُودُ are in reality حَبْرِيَّةٌ. However, Islamic law recognizes them as إِنْشَائِيَّةٌ with respect to all contracts, and requires that they (past tense verbal sentences) be used to convey definiteness.

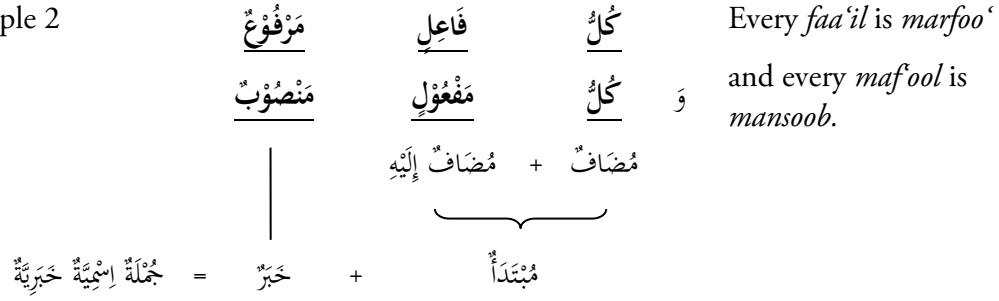
Sentence Analysis:

هَلْ ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ؟ Did Zayd hit?
حَرْفُ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِ + فِعْلٌ + فَاعِلٌ = جُمْلَةٌ إِنْشَائِيَّةٌ

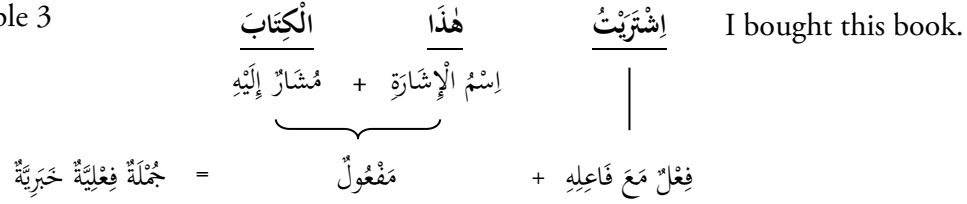
EXERCISE

- State what type of جُمْلَةٌ إِنْشَائِيَّةٌ are the following sentences.
 - يَا إِبْرَاهِيمُ!
 - إِسْمَعْ
 - كَيْفَ حَالُكَ؟
 - لَا تَدْخُلْ

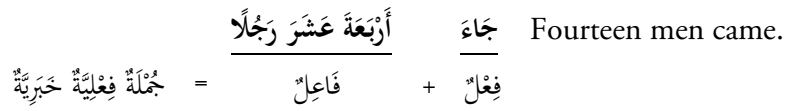
Example 2



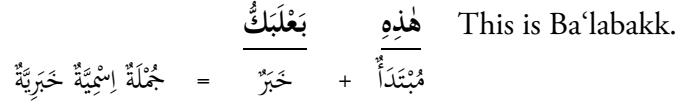
Example 3



Example 4



Example 5



EXERCISES

1. Translate, fill in the إعرابُ and analyze the following phrases.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| i. سيارة الرجل | v. الوردة الجميلة |
| ii. أربع عشر | vi. قلم رخيص |
| iii. باب فصل المدرسة | vii. معديكرب |
| iv. قلم الرجل الطويل | viii. ذلك الكتاب |

2. What is the difference between the following phrases/sentences?

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-----|-----------------------|
| i. عَلَامٌ عَاقِلٌ | and | عُلَامٌ عَاقِلٍ |
| ii. هذه تفاحة | and | هذه التفاحة |
| iii. نافذة السيارة الكبيرة | and | نافذة السيارة الكبيرة |
| iv. الثوب نظيف | and | الثوب النظيف |

3. Correct the following and state the reason(s).

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| i. وَلَدٌ القبيحُ | iii. المعلمُ المدرسةِ |
| ii. الرجلان الطويل | iv. ثمانية عشر |

4. Translate, fill in the إعرابُ and analyze the following.

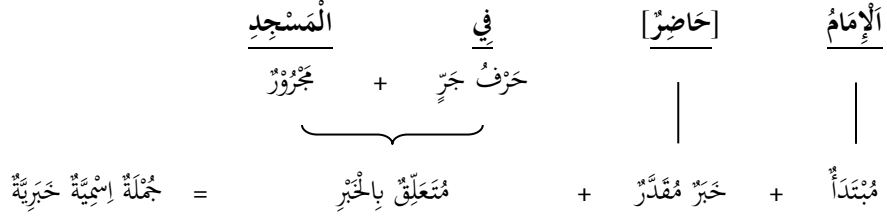
- i. باب فضل قيام ليلة القدر

Section 1.4.4

Additional notes about جُمْلَةٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ

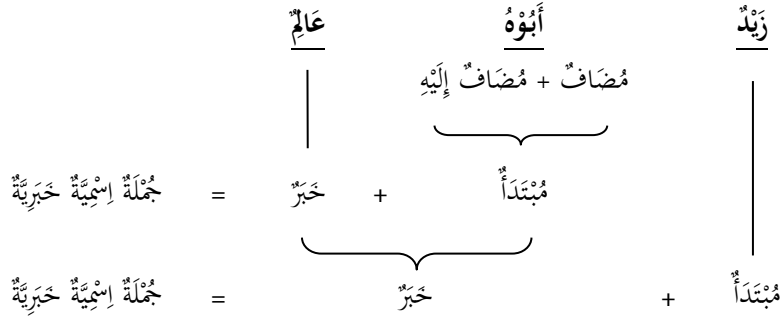
1. Sometimes, the حَبْرٌ is not mentioned, in which case it will be regarded as hidden (مُقَدَّرٌ).⁷

e.g. الإمام في المسجد The Imam is in the mosque.

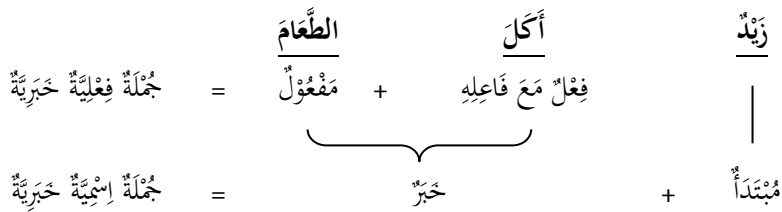


2. The حَبْرٌ can be a complete sentence.

Example 1: زَيْدٌ أَبُوهُ عَالِمٌ Zayd's father is knowledgeable.



Example 2: زَيْدٌ أَكَلَ الطَّعَامَ Zayd ate the food.



EXERCISE

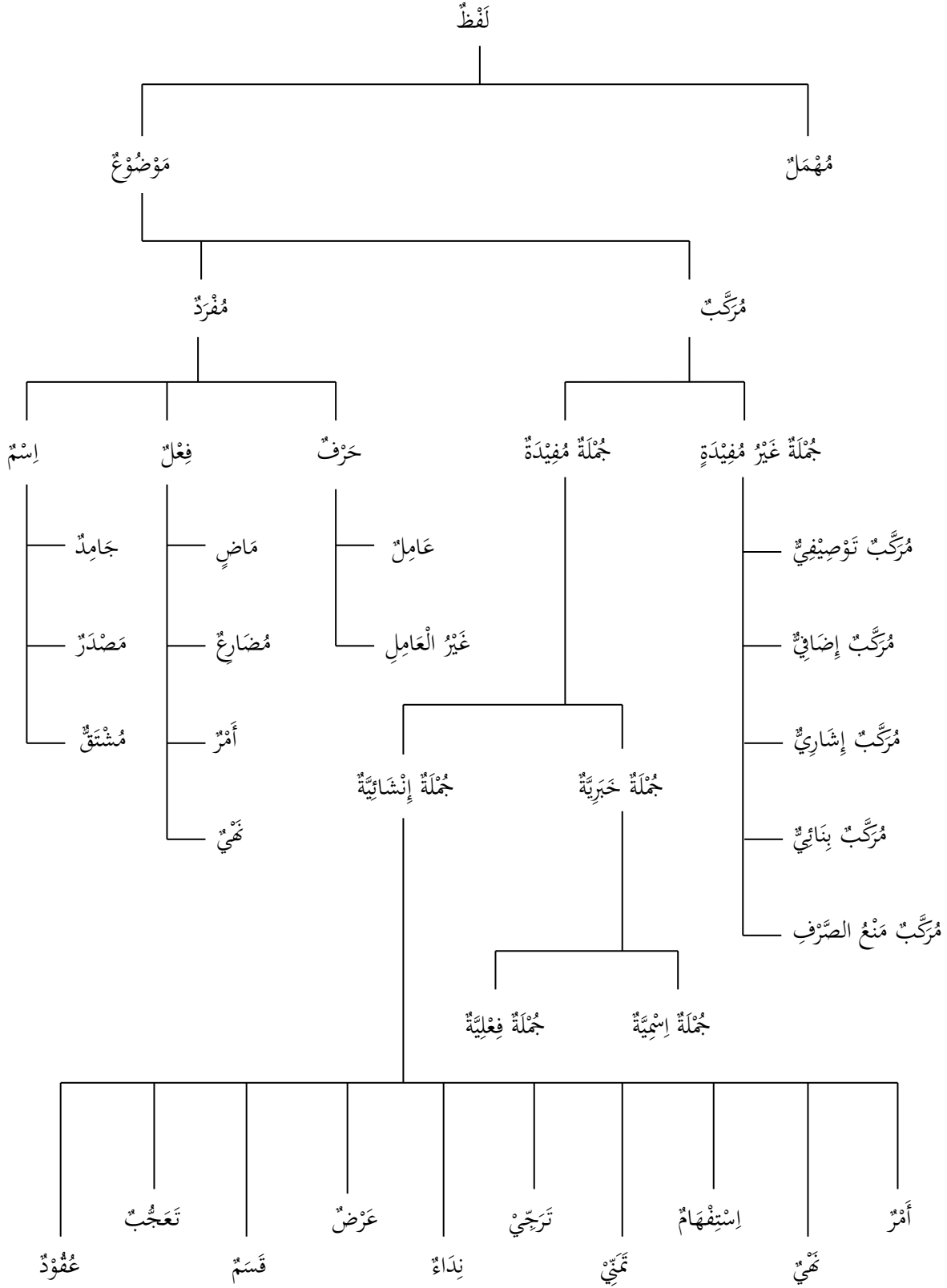
1. Translate, fill in the إِعْرَابُ and analyze the following sentences.

i. القلم في الفصل

ii. الثور يحرق الأرض

⁷ However, generally, to simplify matters, the مُتَعَلِّقٌ is taken to be the حَبْرٌ. See Mawlana Hasan Dockrat, *A Simplified Arabic Grammar* (Azaadvilla: Madrasa Arabia Islamia, 2003), 37.

Summary



Section 1.5

علامات الاسم – Signs of an *ism*:

- | | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. It is preceded by an ال. | e.g. الرَّجُلُ | the man |
| 2. It accepts جَرُّ. | e.g. فِي بَيْتِ زَيْدِ الْجَدِيدِ | in Zayd's new house |
| 3. There is تَنْوِينٌ on the last letter. | e.g. رَجُلٌ | a man |
| 4. It ends with a round ة. | e.g. كَلِمَةٌ | a word |
| 5. It is a dual (تَثْنِيَّةٌ). ⁸ | e.g. رَجُلَانِ | two men |
| 6. It is a plural (جَمْعٌ). | e.g. رِجَالٌ | men |
| 7. It is a مُسْتَدًا إِلَيْهِ (مُتَبَدِّلاً or فَاعِلٌ). | e.g. الرَّجُلُ قَوِيٌّ | The man is strong. |
| | e.g. جَلَسَ زَيْدٌ | Zayd sat. |
| 8. It is مُضَافٌ. | e.g. كِتَابُ زَيْدٍ | book of Zayd |
| 9. It is مُؤَصِّفٌ. | e.g. رَجُلٌ طَوِيلٌ | tall man |
| 10. It is مُنَادِيٌّ. | e.g. يَا رَجُلُ | O man! |
| 11. It is مُصَغَّرٌ. | e.g. رُجَيْلٌ | a little man |
| 12. It is مُسْتَوْبٌ. | e.g. مَكِّيٌّ | a Makkan |

علامات الفعل – Signs of a *fi'l*:

- | | | |
|---|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. It is preceded by قَدْ. | e.g. قَدْ خَرَجَ | He has gone out. |
| 2. It is preceded by سَ. | e.g. سَيَخْرُجُ | He will soon go out. |
| 3. It is preceded by سَوْفَ. | e.g. سَوْفَ يَخْرُجُ | He will go out after a while. |
| 4. It is preceded by حَرْفُ جَزْمٍ. | e.g. لَمْ يَخْرُجْ | He did not go out. |
| 5. It is preceded by حَرْفُ نَصْبٍ. | e.g. لَنْ يَخْرُجَ | He will never go out. |
| 6. It has a hidden ضَمِيرٌ. | e.g. خَرَجَ | He went out. |
| 7. It is an imperative (أَمْرٌ). | e.g. اُخْرُجْ | Go out. |
| 8. It is a prohibitive (نَهْيٌ). | e.g. لَا تَخْرُجْ | Do not go out. |
| 9. It has <i>taa saakin</i> (ت) at the end. | e.g. أَكَلَتْ | She ate. |

علامة الحرف – Sign of a particle:

That word which has no sign of an *ism* or a *fi'l* is a particle (a particle has no sign of its own).

⁸ A *fi'l* is said to be dual or plural with respect to its doer (فاعِلٌ). The action is one. Thus, duality and plurality are signs of an *ism* and not a *fi'l*.

Section 1.5.1

General notes

1. The indefiniteness of an **إِسْمٌ** is indicated by a **تَنْوِينٌ**. Such an **إِسْمٌ** is called **نَكْرَةٌ**.
e.g. **بَيْتٌ** a house (any house)
2. The definiteness of an **إِسْمٌ** is indicated by an **ال**. Such an **إِسْمٌ** is called **مَعْرِفَةٌ**.
e.g. **الْبَيْتُ** the house (a specific house)
3. An **إِسْمٌ** can never have a **تَنْوِينٌ** and an **ال** at the same time.
e.g. **الْبَيْتُ** is incorrect.
4. When the last letter of a word and the first letter of the following word have **سُكُونٌ** (سُكُونٌ), it is called **اجْتِمَاعُ السَّاكِنَيْنِ** (the meeting of two *sukoons*). In this case, the first *sukoon* is generally changed to a *kasrah*.
e.g. **صَرَبَتِ الْبِنْتُ** will become **صَرَبَتِ الْبِنْتُ**. The **هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ** before the **ل** is not pronounced.
In some cases, the first *sukoon* is changed to a *fathah*.
e.g. **مِنَ الْيَابَانِ** (from Japan) becomes **مِنَ الْيَابَانِ**.
In some cases, the first *sukoon* is changed to *dammah*.
e.g. **فَهَمْتُمْ الدَّرْسَ** (you understood the lesson) becomes **فَهَمْتُمْ الدَّرْسَ**.
5. When an **ال** appears before an **إِسْمٌ** which begins with a letter from **الْحُرُوفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ** (sun letters) then the **ل** of **ال** must not be pronounced. The **ل** of **ال** does not receive a *sukoon*. Instead the **حَرْفٌ شَمْسِيٌّ** receives a *tashdeed*.
e.g. **الشَّجَرَةُ** the tree **الشَّمْسُ** the sun
ت ت د ذ ر ز س ش ص ط ظ ل ن = الْحُرُوفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ
6. The remaining letters are known as **الْحُرُوفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ** (moon letters). In these, the **ل** of **ال** receives a *sukoon* and is pronounced. The **حَرْفٌ قَمَرِيٌّ** does not receive a *tashdeed*.
e.g. **الْقَلَمُ** the pen **الْقَمَرُ** the moon
7. Generally, an **إِسْمٌ** ending with a round **ة** (**التَّاءُ الْمَرْبُوطَةُ**) is a feminine (**مُؤَنَّثٌ**).
e.g. **السُّبُّورَةُ** blackboard

8. The *عَيْرُ الْعَاقِلِ* (non-human) plural is generally *وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ*.

e.g. *أَصْنَامٌ كَثِيرَةٌ* many idols *الأَصْنَامُ لَا تَنْفَعُ* The idols do not benefit.
هَذِهِ الْأَصْنَامُ these idols *الْكِلَابُ الْحَارِسَةُ جَالِسَةٌ* The guard dogs are sitting.
كَانَتِ الْبُيُوتُ كَثِيرَةً The houses were many.

9. When writing an *اسْمٌ* ending with two *fathahs* (ـُ), an *alif* (ا) must be added at the end.

e.g. *زَيْدًا*

However, If there is a round *ة* (التاءُ المَرْبُوطَةُ) at the end of such a word, *alif* should not be added.

e.g. *رِسَالَةٌ*

Section 1.6

الصَّمَائِرُ – Personal pronouns

Definition: صَمَائِرُ (singular: صَمِيرٌ) are those words which are used in place of names and refer to the speaker (مُتَكَلِّمٌ) or the second person (حَاضِرٌ) or the third person (غَائِبٌ).

Table 1.1
الصَّمَائِرُ – Personal pronouns

Unattached form (مُنْفَصِلٌ)		Attached form (مُتَّصِلٌ)			
هُوَ	He (one male), it	هُ	his, its, him	وَاحِدٌ مُدَكَّرٌ غَائِبٌ (Singular)	3 rd Person Masculine
هُمَا	They (two males)	هُمَا	their, them	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُدَكَّرٌ غَائِبٌ (Dual)	
هُم	They (many males)	هُم	their, them	جَمْعٌ مُدَكَّرٌ غَائِبٌ (Plural)	
هِيَ	She (one female), it	هَا	her, its	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَائِبٌ (Singular)	3 rd Person Feminine
هُمَا	They (two females)	هُمَا	their, them	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَائِبٌ (Dual)	
هُنَّ	They (many females)	هُنَّ	their, them	جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَائِبٌ (Plural)	
أَنْتَ	You (one male)	كَ	your	وَاحِدٌ مُدَكَّرٌ حَاضِرٌ (Singular)	2 nd Person Masculine
أَنْتُمَا	You (two males)	كُمَا	your	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُدَكَّرٌ حَاضِرٌ (Dual)	
أَنْتُمْ	You (many males)	كُم	your	جَمْعٌ مُدَكَّرٌ حَاضِرٌ (Plural)	
أَنْتِ	You (one female)	كِ	your	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَاضِرٌ (Singular)	2 nd Person Feminine
أَنْتُمَا	You (two females)	كُمَا	your	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَاضِرٌ (Dual)	
أَنْتُنَّ	You (many females)	كُنَّ	your	جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَاضِرٌ (Plural)	
أَنَا	I (one male or female)	ـي، ـي ⁹	my, mine, me	وَاحِدٌ مُتَكَلِّمٌ (مُدَكَّرٌ وَمُؤَنَّثٌ) (Singular)	1 st Person Masc. & Fern.
نَحْنُ	We (many males or females)	نَا	our	(مُدَكَّرٌ وَمُؤَنَّثٌ) تَثْنِيَّةٌ وَجَمْعٌ مُتَكَلِّمٌ (Dual & Plural)	

In the unattached form, these *dameers* can appear as *mubtada*, *faa'il*, etc. In the attached form, they can appear as *maf'ool* or *mudaaf ilayhi*. For more details, see section 2.4.1.

e.g. هُوَ زَيْدٌ He is Zayd. قَلَمُكَ your pen
 أَنَا طَالِبٌ I am a student. نَصَرْتُهَا I helped her.

⁹ Sometimes, a ن (نُونُ الْوَقَائِيَةِ) is added before the يَاءُ صَمِيرٌ to protect an *i'raab* such as in ضَرَبَنِي, which would otherwise be incorrectly read as ضَرَبِي (the الفَتْحُ عَلَى الْفَتْحِ is مُبْنِيٌّ عَلَى الْفَتْحِ of الْفِعْلِ الْمَاضِي of لَامِ الْكَلِمَةِ ضَرَبِي).

Section 1.7¹⁰

أَلْحُرُوفُ الْجَارَةُ – Prepositions

Effect: A حَرْفٌ جَرٌّ gives a جَرٌّ to the اسْمٌ it acts upon which is then known as جَرُّورٌ.

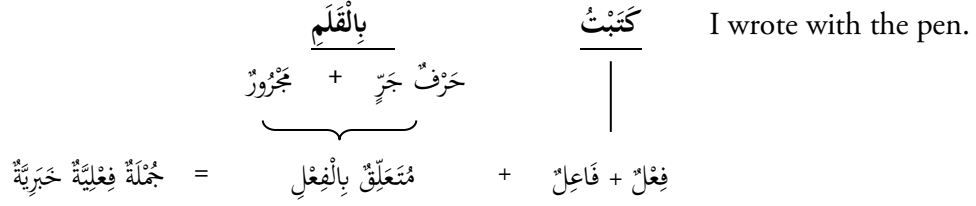
Table 1.2
أَلْحُرُوفُ الْجَارَةُ – Prepositions

حَرْفٌ جَرٌّ	Meaning		Example
1. بِ	with	كَتَبْتُ بِالْقَلَمِ	I wrote with the pen.
2. تَ	by (for oath)	تَاللَّهِ	By Allah!
3. كَ	like	زَيْدٌ كَأَنَّ سَدِي	Zayd is like a lion.
4. لِ	for	الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ	All praise is for Allah.
5. وَ	by (oath)	وَاللَّهِ	By Allah!
6. مُنْذُ	since	مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُ يَوْمِ الْأَحَدِ	I have not seen him since Sunday.
7. مُذْ	since/for	مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مُذْ أَرْبَعَةِ أَيَّامٍ	I have not see him for four days.
8. خَلَا	besides, except	جَاءَ النَّاسُ خَلَا زَيْدٍ	The people came except Zayd.
9. رَبَّ	many a...	رُبَّ عَالِمٍ يَعْمَلُ بِعِلْمِهِ	Many a learned person acts on his knowledge.
10. حَاشَا	besides, except	جَاءَ النَّاسُ حَاشَا زَيْدٍ	The people came except Zayd.
11. مِنْ	from	رَجَعْتُ مِنَ السَّفَرِ	I returned from the journey.
12. عَدَا	besides, except	جَاءَ النَّاسُ عَدَا زَيْدٍ	The people came except Zayd.
13. فِي	in, regarding	زَيْدٌ فِي الْبَيْتِ	Zayd is in the house.
14. عَنِ	regarding	سَأَلَ الطَّبِيبُ عَنِ الْمَرِيضِ	The doctor asked about the patient.
15. عَلَى	on	الثَّوْبُ عَلَى الْكُرْسِيِّ	The cloth/clothes is/are on the chair.
16. حَتَّى	up to, until	نِمْتُ حَتَّى الصُّبْحِ	I slept till dawn.
17. إِلَى	up to, towards	سَافَرْتُ إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ	I travelled to Madinah.

Example 1: النَّحْوُ فِي الْكَلَامِ كَالْمِلْحِ فِي الطَّعَامِ Grammar in speech is like salt in food.

¹⁰ For more examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 1, 76-81.

Example 2 with sentence analysis:



Note: Together, the حَرْفٌ جَرٌّ and مَجْرُورٌ are known as مُتَعَلِّقٌ (connected) of the حَبْرٌ in جُمْلَةٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ (there is more detail to this, and will be discussed later), and of the فِعْلٌ in جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ.

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and analyze the following sentences.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| i. المسجد قريب من بيت زيد | iii. الكتب على المنضدة |
| ii. نزل المطر من السماء | iv. زينب جالسة على الكرسي في الحجرة |

b. Sometimes, إِنَّ appears in the middle of a sentence. This happens in the following two cases:

i. When it is used after a word with root letters ق - و - ل.

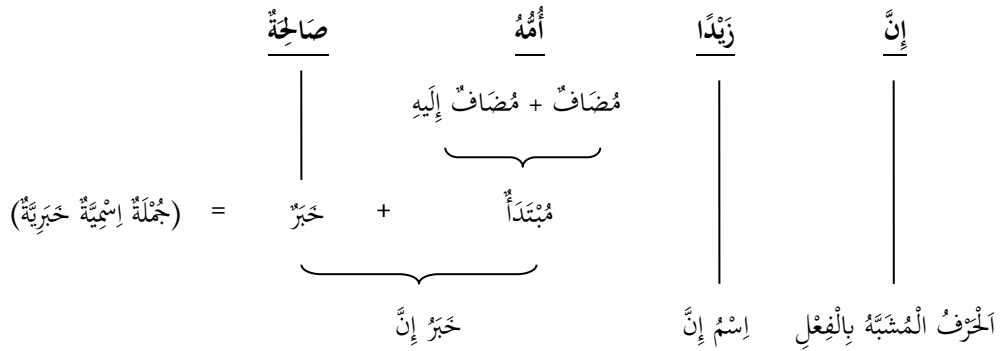
e.g. يَقُولُ إِنَّهَا بَقْرَةٌ صَفْرَاءٌ He says, indeed, it is a yellow cow.

ii. When it is at the beginning of a صِلَّة.¹²

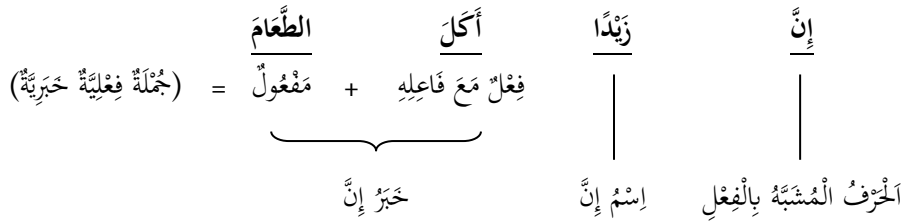
e.g. زُرْتُ الَّذِي إِنِّي أَحْتَرِمُهُ I visited the one whom I respect.

2. The خَبْرٌ can be a complete sentence.

Example 1: إِنَّ زَيْدًا أُمُّهُ صَالِحَةٌ Indeed, Zayd's mother is pious.



Example 2: إِنَّ زَيْدًا أَكَلَ الطَّعَامَ Indeed, Zayd ate the food.



3. If the خَبْرٌ is (جَارٌّ وَجَرُّورٌ), then the خَبْرٌ will appear first and the اِسْمٌ second.

e.g. إِنَّ إِلَيْنَا إِيَابَهُمْ Indeed, to us is their return.



¹² صِلَّة will be discussed in Section 2.4.2.

4. When مَا الْكَافَّةُ is joined to any of these حُرُوفٌ, their effect is cancelled.

e.g. إِيْمَا إِلَهُكُمْ إِلَهٌ وَاحِدٌ Your god is only one god.

Note: In this example, the meaning has also changed to “only.”

5. إِنَّ by itself conveys emphasis. Sometimes, لَأَمْ التَّأْكِيدِ can be added before the حَرِّ to convey even more emphasis.

e.g. إِنَّكَ لَرَسُولُ اللَّهِ Indeed, you are the messenger of Allah.

إِنِّي لَأَعْرِفُ أَخَاكَ Indeed, I know your brother.

EXCERISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab*, and analyze the following sentences.

i. لعل المريض نائم

iv. كأن القمر مصباح

ii. اعلم أن زيدا عاقل

v. ليت القمر طالع

iii. إن رجلا دخل البيت

vi. إن علينا بيانه

Section 1.9¹³

كَانَ وَأَخْوَاتُهَا (also called الْأَفْعَالُ النَّاقِصَةُ) – Auxiliary (defective) *fi'ls*

- *فِعْلٌ لَا زِمٌّ* is called *نَاقِصٌ* (incomplete/defective) because even though it is a *فِعْلٌ لَا زِمٌّ*, it needs two *ma'mools* (مَعْمُولَيْنِ). The sentence remains incomplete with one مَعْمُولٌ.
e.g. كَانَ زَيْدٌ Zayd was (the sentence remains incomplete).
- These أَفْعَالٌ enter upon a مُبْتَدَأٌ and a خَبَرٌ.

Effect: They give رَفْعٌ to the مُبْتَدَأٌ which is then known as *إِسْمٌ كَانَ* (or *إِسْمٌ صَارَ* and so on) and نَصْبٌ to the خَبَرٌ which is then known as *خَبَرٌ كَانَ* (or *خَبَرٌ صَارَ* and so on).

Table 1.4

فِعْلٌ نَاقِصٌ	Meaning		Example
1. كَانَ	was	كَانَ الْبَيْتُ نَظِيْفًا	The house was clean.
2. صَارَ	became	صَارَ الرَّجُلُ غَنِيًّا	The man became wealthy.
3. أَصْبَحَ	happen in the morning	أَصْبَحَ زَيْدٌ مَرِيضًا	Zayd became ill in the morning.
	OR		
	became	أَصْبَحَ زَيْدٌ غَنِيًّا	Zayd became rich.
4. أَمْسَى	happen in the evening, became	أَمْسَى الْعَامِلُ مُتْعَبًا	The worker became tired in the evening.
5. أَضْحَى	happen at midmorning, became	أَضْحَى الْعَمَامُ كَثِيْفًا	The clouds became dense at mid morning.
6. ظَلَّ	happen during the day, became	ظَلَّ الْمَطَرُ نَارِلًا	It rained the whole day.
7. بَاتَ	happen during the night, became	بَاتَ زَيْدٌ نَائِمًا	Zayd passed the night sleeping.
8. مَا دَامَ	as long as	اجْلِسْ مَا دَامَ زَيْدٌ جَالِسًا	Sit as long as Zayd is sitting.
9. مَا زَالَ	always, continuously	مَا زَالَ زَيْدٌ مَرِيضًا	Zayd was continuously sick.
10. مَا بَرِحَ	always, continuously	مَا بَرِحَ زَيْدٌ صَائِمًا	Zayd was always fasting.
11. مَا فَتَيْءَ	always, continuously	مَا فَتَيْءَ زَيْدٌ نَشِيْطًا	Zayd was always active.
12. مَا أَنْفَكَ	always, continuously	مَا أَنْفَكَ التَّاجِرُ صَادِقًا	The trader was always truthful.
13. لَيْسَ	no, not	لَيْسَ الْخَادِمُ قَوِيًّا	The servant is not strong.

¹³ For more examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 1, 62-68 & vol. 2, 151-155.

Sentence Analysis:

كَانَ الْبَيْتُ نَظِيفًا The house was clean.
فِعْلٌ نَاقِصٌ اِسْمٌ كَانَ حَبْرٌ كَانَ

Notes:

1. When كَانَ is used with مُضَارِعٌ, it gives the meaning of past continuous or past habitual.
e.g. كَانَ زَيْدٌ يَكْتُبُ Zayd was writing/Zayd used to write.

Note: Here, the حَبْرٌ of كَانَ is a جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ. Also, note the two ways it is translated above.

2. كَانَ - بَاتَ - ظَلَّ - أَضْحَى - أَمْسَى - أَصْبَحَ - صَارَ - كَانَ can be used in مُضَارِعٌ, أَمْرٌ and هَيَّي as well.
3. مَا زَالَ - مَا انْقَلَبَ - مَا فَتِيَ - مَا بَرِحَ - مَا زَالَ can be used in مُضَارِعٌ but not in أَمْرٌ.
4. مَا دَامَ and مَا لَيْسَ have a past tense only (no مُضَارِعٌ or أَمْرٌ).
5. مَا دَامَ must be preceded by another sentence.
6. The حَبْرٌ of لَيْسَ is sometimes prefixed with a بَ.
e.g. أَلَيْسَ اللهُ بِأَحْكَمِ الْحَاكِمِينَ Is Allah not the greatest of rulers/best of judges?
7. If the حَبْرٌ is (جَارٌ وَمَجْرُورٌ), then the حَبْرٌ will appear first and the مُتَبَدِّئٌ second.

e.g. كَانَ فِي السَّمَاءِ سَحَابٌ There were clouds in the sky.
فِعْلٌ نَاقِصٌ حَبْرٌ كَانَ (مُقَدِّمٌ) اِسْمٌ كَانَ (مُؤَخَّرٌ)

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab*, and analyze the following sentences.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| i. ليس العامل نشيطا | v. صار الكبش سمينا |
| ii. كان منامه مناما صادقا | vi. لا يزال لسانك رطبا من ذكر الله |
| iii. أمسى الغني فقيرا | vii. يصبح المداد جافا |
| iv. نويت الاعتكاف ما دمت في المسجد | |

CHAPTER 2

المُعْرَبُ وَالْمَبْنِيُّ – Declinable and indeclinable words

Words are of two types with respect to changes that occur at their ends. If the end remains the same in all conditions, the word is called مَبْنِيٌّ; and if it does change, the word is called مُعْرَبٌ.

Section 2.1¹⁴

أنواع البناء: The conditions or states (أحوال) which remain unchanged at the end of مَبْنِيٌّ words are four: سُكُونٌ and كَسْرٌ, فَتْحٌ, ضَمٌّ. These are called أنواع البناء.

أنواع الإعراب: Those conditions or states (أحوال) which occur at the end of مُعْرَبٌ words are four: جَزْمٌ, and جَرٌّ, نَصْبٌ, رَفْعٌ. These are called أنواع الإعراب (الإِعْرَابُ for short). These changes are brought about at the end of a مُعْرَبٌ word in accordance with the requirement of the عَامِلٌ (governing word).

علامات الإعراب – Signs of i'raab

The i'raab shows in various ways. These are called علامات الإعراب (signs of i'raab). The two common ones are as follows:

1. الإعراب بالحركة: These are the basic signs and are the most common. I'raab is shown by means of a حَرَكَةٌ i.e. ضَمَّةٌ or فَتْحَةٌ or كَسْرَةٌ or سُكُونٌ (which is the absence of a حَرَكَةٌ).

e.g. لَمْ يَضْرِبْ رَجُلٌ رَجُلًا رَجُلًا

2. الإعراب بالحروف: Sometimes, the i'raab is shown by means of any of the حُرُوفٌ عِلَّةٌ i.e. و or ا or ي.

e.g. أَيْبِكَ أَبَاكَ أَبُوكَ

¹⁴ This section is based upon the discussion in *al-Nahw al-Wadiah*. See *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Ibtida'iyyah*, vol. 2, 7-18.

حَالَاتُ الْمُعْرَبِ – States of *mu'rab*

As mentioned above, the conditions or states that occur at the end of مُعْرَبُ words are four. Below, we look at them in more detail.

1. **حَالَةُ الرَّفْعِ** is the condition in which a ضَمَّةٌ or its substitute such as حَرْفُ عِلَّةٍ (و) appears at the end of a word. Such a word is said to be مَرْفُوعٌ.

e.g. أَبُو خَالِدٍ أَخُوكَ أَخٌ

2. **حَالَةُ النَّصْبِ** is the condition in which a فَتْحَةٌ or its substitute such as حَرْفُ عِلَّةٍ (ا) appears at the end of a word. Such a word is said to be مَنْصُوبٌ.

e.g. أَبَا خَالِدٍ أَخَاكَ أَخًا

3. **حَالَةُ الْجَزْمِ** is the condition in which a كَسْرَةٌ or its substitute such as حَرْفُ عِلَّةٍ (ي) appears at the end of a word. Such a word is said to be مَجْرُومٌ.

e.g. أَبِي خَالِدٍ أَخِيكَ أَخِي

4. **حَالَةُ الْجَزْمِ** is the condition in which a سُكُونٌ appears at the end of a word or its substitute (ن in the case of فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ) is dropped from the end. Such a word is said to be مَجْرُومٌ.

e.g. لَمْ يَضْرِبُوا لَمْ يَضْرِبْ

Note: It should be remembered that *fi'ls* can only be in the state of رَفْعٌ, نَصْبٌ or جَزْمٌ, while *isms* can only be in a state of رَفْعٌ, نَصْبٌ, or جَزْمٌ.

The difference between كَسْرٌ - فَتْحٌ - ضَمٌّ and كَسْرَةٌ - فَتْحَةٌ - ضَمَّةٌ

- The words كَسْرٌ - فَتْحٌ - ضَمٌّ are used to describe the states at the end of a مَبْنِيٌّ, e.g. ضَرَبَ has a فَتْحٌ at the end. It is مَبْنِيٌّ عَلَى الْفَتْحِ.
- The words كَسْرَةٌ - فَتْحَةٌ - ضَمَّةٌ are used for all other places where (ـُ), (ـِ) and (ـٍ) appear. In other words, (ـُ), (ـِ) and (ـٍ) are normally called كَسْرَةٌ - فَتْحَةٌ - ضَمَّةٌ, respectively, wherever they occur except when one needs to precisely point out the end of a مَبْنِيٌّ word. Thus, one would say ضَرَبَ has a فَتْحَةٌ on (ض), a فَتْحَةٌ on (ر), and a فَتْحَةٌ on (ب), but one must say (ضَرَبَ) is مَبْنِيٌّ عَلَى الْفَتْحِ.

Section 2.2

الْمَبْنِيُّ – The indeclinable word

As mentioned earlier, a مَبْنِيٌّ is a word whose end remains unchanged in all conditions i.e. irrespective of the requirement of the عَامِلٌ governing it.

e.g.	جَاءَ هَذَا	رَأَيْتُ هَذَا	مَرَرْتُ بِهَذَا
	This came.	I saw this.	I passed by this.

Note: The حَرَكَتٌ at the end of هَذَا remains constant and does not change according to the عَامِلٌ requirement.

Types of مَبْنِيٌّ:

1. All Particles (حُرُوفٌ) *
2. أَلْفَعْلُ الْمَاضِي * *
3. الْأَمْرُ الْحَاضِرُ الْمَعْرُوفُ * *
4. Those *seeghabs* of فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ that are جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ (حَاضِرٌ and عَائِبٌ) or have نُونُ التَّأَكِيدِ (ثَقِيلَةٌ and خَفِيفَةٌ).
5. Amongst *isms*, those whose ends remain constant are called عَيْرُ الْمُتَمَكِّنِ i.e. *isms* which do not give place to changes. These *isms* are مَبْنِيٌّ and are recognized by their resemblance with any one of the three types of الْأَصْلُ الْمَبْنِيُّ الْأَصْلُ words (حُرُوفٌ or أَلْفَعْلُ الْمَاضِي or الْأَمْرُ الْحَاضِرُ الْمَعْرُوفُ). This resemblance can be in any one of the following ways:
 - a. Resemblance in meaning. For example, the *ism* رُوِيَ (give grace/respice) resembles the word أَمْهَلٌ, which is الْأَمْرُ الْحَاضِرُ الْمَعْرُوفُ (one of the الْأَصْلُ الْمَبْنِيُّ الْأَصْلُ) and has the same meaning.
 - b. Resemblance in dependency. For example, the *ism* هَذَا (اسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ), which is dependent on a مُشَارٌ إِلَيْهِ to give meaning, resembles a حَرْفٌ (one of the الْأَصْلُ الْمَبْنِيُّ الْأَصْلُ), which is also dependent on another word to give meaning.
 - c. Resemblance in having less than three letters. For example, the *ism* مَنْ, which is less than three letters, resembles حَرْفٌ (e.g. وَ), which is also generally less than three letters.

- d. Resemblance in having had a حَرْفٌ originally. For example, the *ism* أَحَدٌ عَشَرَ resembles a حَرْفٌ in the sense that originally it contained a حَرْفٌ (أَحَدٌ وَعَشْرٌ).

*These three are known as الْمَبْنِيُّ الْأَصْلُ.

15: الْإِعْرَابُ الْمَحَلِّيُّ

When a مَبْنِيٌّ word appears in a sentence in a place where it is supposed to be in the state of رُفْعٌ, جَزْمٌ, or نَصْبٌ, its end does not change because it is مَبْنِيٌّ. However, it is said that it is in the place of رُفْعٌ, نَصْبٌ, جَزْمٌ, or جَزْمٌ (فِي مَحَلِّ رُفْعٍ أَوْ نَصْبٍ أَوْ جَزْمٍ أَوْ جَزْمٍ), in accordance with its place in the sentence.

For example,

نَصَرْنَاهُ We helped him.

Keeping in mind that all pronouns are مَبْنِيٌّ, this sentence will be analyzed as follows:

نَصَرْنَا is مَبْنِيٌّ عَلَى السُّكُونِ and is فِعْلٌ مَاضٍ.

نَا is مَبْنِيٌّ عَلَى السُّكُونِ and is فَاعِلٌ.

هُ is مَبْنِيٌّ عَلَى الضَّمِّ and is مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ.

EXERCISE

1. Analyze the following sentences like in the example given above.

- i. قرأت هذا الكتاب
- ii. ذهبت إلى عمه
- iii. كتابه في بيته

¹⁵ For more examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 2, 35-38.

Section 2.3

الْمُعْرَبُ – The declinable word

As mentioned above, a مُعْرَبٌ is a word whose end accepts any of the *i'raab* according to the requirement of the عَامِلٌ governing it.

e.g.	جاءَ رَجُلٌ	رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا	مَرَزْتُ بِرَجُلٍ
	A man came.	I saw a man.	I passed by a man.

Note: Here, the *i'raab* of رجل has changed according to the requirement of the عَامِلٌ.

Types of مُعْرَبٌ:

1. Amongst *fi'ls*, all of the *seeghabs* of فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ besides those of جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ (حَاضِرٌ and غَائِبٌ) and those with نُونُ التَّأَكِيدِ (حَقِيقَةٌ and تَقِيلَةٌ) are مُعْرَبٌ.
2. Amongst *isms*, those *isms* which accept *i'raab* changes are مُعْرَبٌ. They are known as مُتَمَكِّنٌ i.e. *isms* which give place to *i'raab* changes.

Note: Such an *ism* is مُعْرَبٌ only when it is used in a sentence. If not used in a sentence, it is مَبْنِيٌّ. For example, بَيْتٌ on its own, when not part of a sentence, is مَبْنِيٌّ عَلَى الضَّمِّ.

EXERCISES

1. State with reason whether the following words are مَبْنِيٌّ or مُعْرَبٌ.

i. سَمِعَ	v. يَكْسِرُونَ
ii. مُنْذُ	vi. لَكِنَّ
iii. يَنْصُرُ	vii. ذَلِكَ
iv. يَضْرِبْنَ	viii. اِسْمَعِي

2. Translate the following sentences and identify the مَبْنِيٌّ and مُعْرَبٌ words in them.

i. نَظَرْتُ إِلَى الرَّهْرَةِ	v. مَتَى يُسَافِرُ عَلِيٌّ؟
ii. أَحَدْتُ الْكِتَابَ مِنَ الصَّدِيقِ	vi. الْأَبُ فِي الدَّارِ
iii. فَرِحَ الطَّالِبُ بِالنَّتِيجَةِ	vii. الْوَلَدُ مُؤَدَّبٌ
iv. كَيْفَ جَاءَ خَالِدٌ؟	viii. اللَّهُ يُحِبُّ الْمُحْسِنِينَ

Section 2.4

أقسام الأسماء المبنية – Types of indeclinable *isms*

The types of الأسماء المبنية are as follows:

1. الضمائر (personal pronouns)
2. الأسماء الموصولة (relative pronouns)
3. أسماء الإشارة (demonstrative pronouns)
4. أسماء الأفعال (*isms* that have the meaning of *fi'ls*)
5. أسماء الأصوات (*isms* that denote a sound)
6. الظروف (adverbs)
7. الكنايات (*isms* that indicate an unspecified quantity)
8. المركب البنائي (numerical phrase)

In the following pages, we will look at each of these in detail.

Section 2.4.1¹⁶

الضَّمَائِرُ – Personal pronouns

We have discussed ضَمَائِرُ before. Now, we will look at them in greater detail.

Definition: A ضَمِيرٌ (plural: ضَمَائِرُ) is a word which is used in place of an اِسْمٌ and refers to the speaker (مُتَكَلِّمٌ) or the second person (حَاضِرٌ) or the third person (غَائِبٌ).

There are two types of ضَمَائِرُ:

1. الضَّمِيرُ الْبَارِزُ – Visible or independent pronoun: It is a ضَمِيرٌ which is visible and has a distinct form. It can appear on its own, i.e. unattached to another word, or it can be attached to another word. These two are defined as follows:
 - i. الضَّمِيرُ الْمُنْفَصِلُ – Unattached pronoun: It is a ضَمِيرٌ which can be pronounced on its own without being connected to another word.
 - ii. الضَّمِيرُ الْمُتَّصِلُ – Attached pronoun: It is a ضَمِيرٌ which cannot be pronounced on its own without being connected to another word.
2. الضَّمِيرُ الْمُسْتَتِرُ – Hidden or implied pronoun: It is a ضَمِيرٌ which is not visible but is implied. It is always مُتَّصِلٌ.

Note: A hidden ضَمِيرٌ can only be in مَجَلِّ رَفْعٍ. (refer to الْإِعْرَابُ الْمَحَلِّيُّ discussed above and Table 2.2 on the next page.)

Below are tables showing different forms that the ضَمَائِرُ will assume in the various conditions/states (*haalaat*).

¹⁶ For more details, examples, and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 2, 120-135.

Table 2.1

صَمِيرٌ مُنْفَصِلٌ بَارِزٌ فِي مَحَلِّ رَفْعٍ (صَمِيرٌ مَرْفُوعٌ مُنْفَصِلٌ)

هُوَ	وَاحِدٌ مُدَكَّرٌ غَائِبٌ
هُمَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُدَكَّرٌ غَائِبٌ
هُمٌ	جَمْعٌ مُدَكَّرٌ غَائِبٌ
هِيَ	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَائِبٌ
هُمَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَائِبٌ
هُنَّ	جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَائِبٌ
أَنْتَ	وَاحِدٌ مُدَكَّرٌ حَاضِرٌ
أَنْتُمَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُدَكَّرٌ حَاضِرٌ
أَنْتُمْ	جَمْعٌ مُدَكَّرٌ حَاضِرٌ
أَنْتِ	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَاضِرٌ
أَنْتُمَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَاضِرٌ
أَنْتُنَّ	جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَاضِرٌ
أَنَا	وَاحِدٌ مُتَكَلِّمٌ (مُدَكَّرٌ وَمُؤَنَّثٌ)
نَحْنُ	تَثْنِيَّةٌ وَجَمْعٌ مُتَكَلِّمٌ (مُدَكَّرٌ وَمُؤَنَّثٌ)

e.g.

رُجُلٌ
حَبْرٌ

هُوَ
مُبْتَدَأٌ

(فِي مَحَلِّ رَفْعٍ)

Table 2.3

ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ وَضَمِيرٌ مُنْفَصِلٌ فِي مَحَلِّ نَصْبٍ (ضَمِيرٌ مُنْصُوبٌ مُتَّصِلٌ وَضَمِيرٌ مُنْصُوبٌ مُنْفَصِلٌ) بَارِزٌ

ضَمِيرٌ مُنْصُوبٌ مُنْفَصِلٌ بَارِزٌ	ضَمِيرٌ مُنْصُوبٌ مُتَّصِلٌ بَارِزٌ		
	Dameer	Example	
إِيَّاهُ	هـ	ضَرَبَهُ	وَاحِدٌ مُذَكَّرٌ غَائِبٌ
إِيَّاهُمَا	هما	ضَرَبَهُمَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُذَكَّرٌ غَائِبٌ
إِيَّاهُمْ	هم	ضَرَبَهُمْ	جَمْعٌ مُذَكَّرٌ غَائِبٌ
إِيَّاهَا	ها	ضَرَبَهَا	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَائِبٌ
إِيَّاهُمَا	هما	ضَرَبَهُمَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَائِبٌ
إِيَّاهُنَّ	هن	ضَرَبَهُنَّ	جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَائِبٌ
إِيَّاكَ	ك	ضَرَبَكَ	وَاحِدٌ مُذَكَّرٌ حَاضِرٌ
إِيَّاكُمَا	كما	ضَرَبَكُمَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُذَكَّرٌ حَاضِرٌ
إِيَّاكُمْ	كم	ضَرَبَكُمْ	جَمْعٌ مُذَكَّرٌ حَاضِرٌ
إِيَّاكِ	ك	ضَرَبَكِ	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَاضِرٌ
إِيَّاكُمَا	كما	ضَرَبَكُمَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَاضِرٌ
إِيَّاكنَّ	كن	ضَرَبَكُنَّ	جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَاضِرٌ
إِيَّايَ	ي	ضَرَبَنِي ¹⁷	وَاحِدٌ مُتَكَلِّمٌ (مُذَكَّرٌ وَمُؤَنَّثٌ)
إِيَّانَا	نا	ضَرَبَنَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ وَجَمْعٌ مُتَكَلِّمٌ (مُذَكَّرٌ وَمُؤَنَّثٌ)

e.g. نَعْبُدُ إِيَّاكَ You alone we worship.
 مَفْعُولٌ مُقَدَّمٌ (فِي مَحَلِّ نَصْبٍ) فِعْلٌ مَعَ فَاعِلِهِ

¹⁷ Sometimes, a ن (نُونُ الْوَقَايَةِ) is added before the يَاءِ ضَمِيرٍ to protect an *i'raab* as in ضَرَبَنِي, which would otherwise be incorrectly read as ضَرَبَنِي (the مَبْنِيُّ عَلَى الْفَتْحِ is الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي of لَامِ كَلِمَةِ ضَرَبَنِي).

There are two ways in which ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ بَارِزٌ appears in مَحَلِّ جَرِّ. One is when it is preceded by a حَرْفٌ جَرِّ, and the other is when some other word is مُضَافٌ to it.

Table 2.4
ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ بَارِزٌ فِي مَحَلِّ جَرِّ (ضَمِيرٌ مُجْرُورٌ مُتَّصِلٌ)

بِحَرْفِ الْجَرِّ	بِالْمُضَافَةِ	
لَهُ	دَارُهُ	وَاحِدٌ مُدَكَّرٌ غَائِبٌ
لَهُمَا	دَارُهُمَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُدَكَّرٌ غَائِبٌ
لَهُمْ	دَارُهُمْ	جَمْعٌ مُدَكَّرٌ غَائِبٌ
لَهَا	دَارُهَا	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَائِبٌ
لَهُمَا	دَارُهُمَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَائِبٌ
لَهُنَّ	دَارُهُنَّ	جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَائِبٌ
لَكَ	دَارِكَ	وَاحِدٌ مُدَكَّرٌ حَاضِرٌ
لَكُمَا	دَارِكُمَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُدَكَّرٌ حَاضِرٌ
لَكُمْ	دَارِكُمْ	جَمْعٌ مُدَكَّرٌ حَاضِرٌ
لِكَ	دَارِكَ	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَاضِرٌ
لَكُمَا	دَارِكُمَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَاضِرٌ
لَكُنَّ	دَارِكُنَّ	جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَاضِرٌ
لِي	دَارِي	وَاحِدٌ مُتَكَلِّمٌ (مُدَكَّرٌ وَمُؤَنَّثٌ)
لَنَا	دَارِنَا	تَثْنِيَّةٌ وَجَمْعٌ مُتَكَلِّمٌ (مُدَكَّرٌ وَمُؤَنَّثٌ)

e.g.

لَهُ	دَارُهُ	His house is his.
حَرْفُ جَرِّ + مُجْرُورٌ	مُضَافٌ + مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ	
(ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ مُجْرُورٌ بِحَرْفِ الْجَرِّ)	(ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ مُجْرُورٌ بِالْمُضَافَةِ)	

Note: The ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ بَارِزٌ in مَحَلِّ جَرِّ will always be مُتَّصِلٌ.

ضَمِيرُ الشَّانِ:

It is a singular ضَمِيرٌ غَائِبٌ مُدَكَّرٌ which sometimes appears at the beginning of a sentence without a مَرْجِعٌ (an earlier word that it could refer to). The sentence after it clarifies such a ضَمِيرٌ.

e.g. إِنَّهُ زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ Indeed, the matter is that Zayd is standing.

ضَمِيرُ الْقِصَّةِ:

It is a singular ضَمِيرٌ غَائِبٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ which sometimes appears at the beginning of a sentence without a مَرْجِعٌ (an earlier word that it could refer to). The sentence after it clarifies such a ضَمِيرٌ.

e.g. إِنَّهَا فَاطِمَةٌ قَائِمَةٌ Indeed, the matter is that Fatimah is standing.

ضَمِيرُ الْفَصْلِ:

It is a ضَمِيرٌ which appears between a مُبْتَدَأٌ and a خَبْرٌ for emphasis and separation.

e.g. أُولَئِكَ هُمُ الْمُفْلِحُونَ It is they who are successful.

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and analyze the following sentences, pointing out all the ضَمَائِرُ, as well as their types and حَالَاتٌ.

i. القطار قدم في وقته

iii. الشُّرْطِيُّ نَصَرَنا

ii. نحن نرزقك

iv. الله يرزقها وإياكم

Section 2.4.2¹⁸

الأسماء الموصولة - Relative pronouns

Definition: An *إِسْمٌ مَوْصُولٌ* is an *إِسْمٌ مَعْرِفَةٌ* whose meaning/purpose is understood through the sentence, which comes after it, which is called *صِلَةٌ*.

- An *إِسْمٌ مَوْصُولٌ* cannot form a complete part of a sentence on its own. It must have a *صِلَةٌ* which relates (refers back) to it. The *صِلَةٌ* which is generally a *جُمْلَةٌ حَرَبِيَّةٌ* must have a *ضَمِيرٌ* (visible or hidden) referring to the *إِسْمٌ مَوْصُولٌ*. This *ضَمِيرٌ* is called *عَائِدٌ*.

Table 2.5

الأسماء الموصولة للمذكر

وَاحِدٌ	الَّذِي	who, that, which	
تَنْثِيئَةٌ	الَّذَانِ	those two who, that, which	فِي مَحَلِّ رَفْعٍ
تَنْثِيئَةٌ	الَّذَيْنِ	those two who, that, which	فِي مَحَلِّ نَصْبٍ وَجَرٍ
جَمْعٌ	الَّذِينَ	those who, that, which	

Table 2.6

الأسماء الموصولة للمؤنث

وَاحِدٌ	الَّتِي	who, that, which	
تَنْثِيئَةٌ	الَّتَانِ	those two who, that, which	فِي مَحَلِّ رَفْعٍ
تَنْثِيئَةٌ	الَّتَيْنِ	those two who, that, which	فِي مَحَلِّ نَصْبٍ وَجَرٍ
جَمْعٌ	الَّتِي	those who, that, which	
جَمْعٌ	الَّتَوَانِ	those who, that, which	

Examples

1. جَاءَ الَّذِي نَصَرَكَ **The one** (masculine) who helped you, came.
2. جَاءَ الَّذَانِ نَصَرَكَ **The two** (masculine) who helped you, came.
3. رَأَيْتُ الَّذَيْنِ نَصَرَكَ I saw **the two** (masculine) who helped you.
4. لَقِيتُ الَّذَيْنِ نَصَرُونِي I met **those** (masculine) who helped me.
5. جَاءَتِ الَّتِي نَصَرَتْكَ **The one** (feminine) who helped you, came.
6. جَاءَتِ اللَّتَانِ نَصَرَتَاكَ **The two** (feminine) who helped you, came.

¹⁸ For more examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 2, 136-140.

7. رَأَيْتُ اللَّتَيْنِ نَصَرَتَاكَ I saw **the two** (feminine) who helped you.
 8. جَاءَتِ اللَّاتِي نَصَرَتَاكَ **Those** (feminine) who helped you, came.

Additional relative pronouns:

1. مَا and مَنْ (that and who)

- These are used for all genders and all numbers.
- The difference is that مَنْ is used for intelligent beings (ذَوِي الْعُقُولِ) and مَا is used for non-intelligent beings (غَيْرِ ذَوِي الْعُقُولِ).

e.g. أَحْسِنُ إِلَى مَنْ أَحْسَنَ إِلَيْكَ Show goodness to that person who has shown goodness to you.
 قَرَأْتُ مَا كَتَبْتَ I read what you wrote.

2. أَيُّ and أَيَّةٌ

- They are generally مُعَرَّبٌ and used in إِضَافَةٌ.
- أَيُّ has the meaning of الَّذِي.

e.g. مِنْ أَيِّ كِتَابٍ from which book...

- أَيَّةٌ has the meaning of الَّتِي.

e.g. أَيَّةُ بِنْتٍ which girl...

3. ال which appears before an اِسْمٌ فَاعِلٍ and an اِسْمٌ مَفْعُولٍ, has the effect of مَوْصُولٌ.

e.g.	الَسَّامِعُ	would equal	الَّذِي سَمِعَ
	الْمَسْمُوعُ	would equal	الَّذِي سُمِعَ
	الَسَّامِعُونَ	would equal	الَّذِينَ سَمِعُوا

4. ذُو

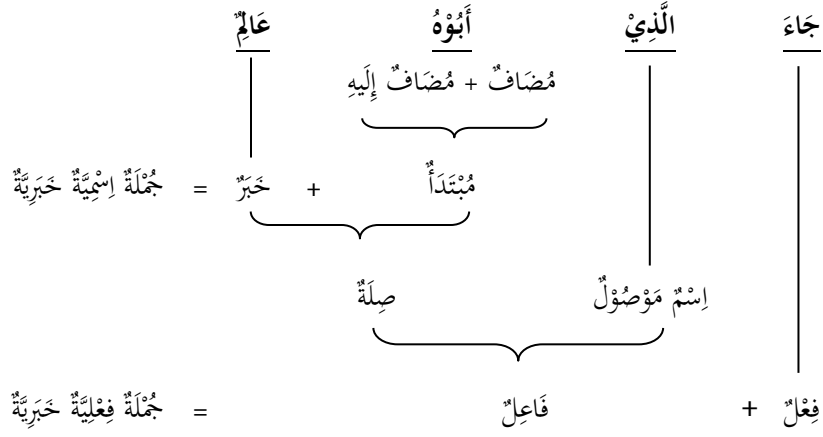
According to the dialect of the tribe بَنُو طَيِّ, it is an مَوْصُولٌ.

It is used for all genders and all numbers, without its form changing.

e.g.	جَاءَ ذُو نَصْرِكَ	equals	جَاءَ الَّذِي نَصْرَكَ	The one who helped you, came.
	رَأَيْتُ ذُو نَصْرِكَ	equals	رَأَيْتُ الَّذِي نَصْرَكَ	I saw the one who helped you.
	مَرَرْتُ بِذُو نَصْرِكَ	equals	مَرَرْتُ بِالَّذِي نَصْرَكَ	I passed by the one who helped you.

Sentence Analysis:

جاءَ الَّذِي أَبُوهُ عَالِمٌ The person whose father is knowledgeable, came.



EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab*, and analyze the following sentences.

- i. أين الذي نصر زيدا؟
- ii. الله يعلم ما في الأرض
- iii. جاءت اللتان تسكنان أماننا
- iv. إن الذين كفروا لا يدخلون الجنة

Section 2.4.3¹⁹

أَسْمَاءُ الإِشَارَةِ – Demonstrative *isms*

Definition: An إِشَارَةِ إِسْمٌ is an إِسْمٌ which is used to point at something. This إِسْمٌ is of two types.

- i. لِلْقَرِيبِ: It is used for pointing at something near.
- ii. لِلْبَعِيدِ: It is used for pointing at something far.

Table 2.7
أَسْمَاءُ الإِشَارَةِ لِلْمُنْدَكِرِ

لِلْقَرِيبِ			لِلْبَعِيدِ			
وَاحِدٌ	هَذَا	this		ذَلِكَ	that	
تَثْنِيَّةٌ	هَذَانِ	these two...	حَالَةُ الرَّفْعِ	ذَانِكَ	those two...	حَالَةُ الرَّفْعِ
تَثْنِيَّةٌ	هَذَيْنِ	these two...	حَالَةُ النَّصْبِ وَالْجَرِّ	ذَيْنِكَ	those two...	حَالَةُ النَّصْبِ وَالْجَرِّ
جَمْعٌ	هَؤُلَاءِ	these		أُولَئِكَ	those	

Table 2.8
أَسْمَاءُ الإِشَارَةِ لِلْمَوْثِقِ

لِلْقَرِيبِ			لِلْبَعِيدِ			
وَاحِدٌ	هَؤُلَاءِ	this		تِلْكَ	that	
تَثْنِيَّةٌ	هَاتَانِ	these two...	حَالَةُ الرَّفْعِ	تَانِكَ	those two...	حَالَةُ الرَّفْعِ
تَثْنِيَّةٌ	هَاتَيْنِ	these two...	حَالَةُ النَّصْبِ وَالْجَرِّ	تَيْنِكَ	those two...	حَالَةُ النَّصْبِ وَالْجَرِّ
جَمْعٌ	هَؤُلَاءِ	these		أُولَئِكَ	those	

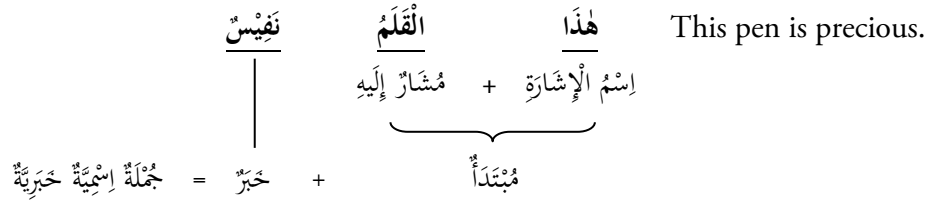
- e.g. ذَلِكَ الْكِتَابُ that book
 هَؤُلَاءِ النِّسَاءُ these women
 أُولَئِكَ الرِّجَالُ those men

¹⁹ For more examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 2, 141-145.

Notes:

1. In the case of اَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ لِلْقَرِيبِ, for both masculine and feminine, the هـ in the beginning is not part of the actual اِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ. It is, in fact, a حَرْفٌ تَنْبِيْهِ. However, it is so often used with the اَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ لِلْقَرِيبِ that it is normally considered a part of them.
2. The ك of اِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ (الْبَعِيدِ) is sometimes changed according to the gender or the number of persons being addressed. The meaning is not affected.
e.g. دَلِكُمْا رَبُّكُمَا He is the Lord of both of you.
3. If the مِشَارٌ اِلَيْهِ is a مُضَافٌ, then the اِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ comes after the اِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ اِلَيْهِ.
e.g. كِتَابُكَ هَذَا this book of yours
4. If the اِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ occurs as a مُبْتَدَأٌ, then the حَبْرٌ is generally a نَكْرَةٌ.
e.g. هَذَا كِتَابٌ This is a book.
However, if the حَبْرٌ is also مَعْرِفَةٌ, then a suitable ضَمِيْرٌ should be added between the مُبْتَدَأٌ, which is an اِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ, and the حَبْرٌ for it to remain a complete sentence.
e.g. هَذَا هُوَ الْكِتَابُ This is the book.
If no ضَمِيْرٌ is added, it would be an incomplete sentence.
e.g. هَذَا الْكِتَابُ this book
5. If the حَبْرٌ is a مُضَافٌ, then there will be no need for a ضَمِيْرٌ to be added between the مُبْتَدَأٌ and the حَبْرٌ.
e.g. هَذَا ابْنُ الْمَلِكِ This is the son of the king.
6. هُنَا or هُنَا (here) and هُنَاكَ (there) are also اَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ. However, they do not have any special rules.

Sentence Analysis:



EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab*, and analyze the following sentences.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| i. تلك السيارة قديمة | iv. هذه حجرة واسعة |
| ii. أولئك تجار صادقون | v. هذان ولدان مهذبان |
| iii. هؤلاء طلاب المدرسة | vi. هذان الولدان مهذبان |

Section 2.4.4²⁰

أَسْمَاءُ الْأَفْعَالِ – Isms that have the meaning of *fi'ls*

Definition: These are *isms* that have the meaning of *fi'ls* but do not accept their signs.

- Some of them have the meaning of *الفعل الماضي* and give the *ism* after it a *raf'*; and the one which has the meaning of *الأمر الحاضر*, gives the *ism* after it a *nashb*.

Table 2.9

Isms in the Meaning of الفعل الماضي

<i>Ism</i>	<i>Fi'l</i>	Meaning	Example	
هَيْهَاتَ	بَعُدَ	he/it became far, it is far (from him)	هَيْهَاتَ زَيْدٌ أَنْ يَفْعَلَ هَذَا	It is far from (beyond) Zayd to do this.
شَتَانَ	بَعُدَ وَ إِفْتَرَقَ	same as above; and what a difference, there is a difference between	شَتَانَ بَيْنَ الْعَالِمِ وَالْجَاهِلِ	What a difference there is between the learned and the ignorant!
سَرَعَانَ	سَرَعَ	he hastened	سَرَعَانَ زَيْدٌ	Zayd hastened.

Table 2.10

Isms in the Meaning of الأمر الحاضر

<i>Ism</i>	<i>Fi'l</i>	Meaning	Example	
رُوَيْدًا	أَمَّهَلْ	Give respite!	رُوَيْدًا زَيْدًا	Give Zayd respite.
بَلَةً	دَعْ	Leave!; Give up!	بَلَةَ التَّفَكُّرِ فِيمَا لَا يَغْنِيكَ	Give up thinking about that which does not concern you.
دُونَكَ – هَا	خُذْ	Take!	دُونَكَ اللَّبَنَ	Take the milk.
عَلَيْكَ	الزَّمْ	Hold on to (it)!; (It is) incumbent on you	عَلَيْكَ بِسُنَّتِي	Hold on to my Sunnah.
حَيْهَاتَ – حَيَّ هَيْتَ – هَلُمَّ	إِنْتِ – عَجِّلْ أَقْبِلْ	Come!; Hasten!	حَيَّ عَلَى الصَّلَاةِ	Come to <i>salah</i> .

²⁰ For more examples and exercises, please refer to 'Ali al-Jaarim & Mustafa Ameen, *al-Nahw al-Wadiah li al-Madaris al-Thanawiyah*, (Cairo: Dar al-Ma'arif, n.d.), vol. 1, 40-43.

Notes:

1. There are some other *isms* which have the meaning of *fi'ls*. These are as follows:

تَعَالَ	(إِئْتِ – come)	أَمِئِنُ	(إِسْتَجِبْ) – accept)
صَهْ	(أَسْكُتْ – keep quite)	أَكْتَفُ	(اِكْتَفِ) – suffice)
هَاتِ	(إِعْطِ – bring, give)	تَبَعْدُ عَنِّي	(إِلَيْكَ عَنِّي) – away from me)
عَلَيْ بِهِ	(جِئْ بِهِ عِنْدِي) – bring him/it to me)		

2. Some of these *isms* are inflectable (مُنْتَصِرَاتٌ), i.e. their form changes.

i. هَاتِيْنَ هَاتِيَا هَاتِيْ هَاتُوا هَاتِيَا هَاتِ

e.g. قُلْ هَاتُوا بُرْهَانَكُمْ إِنْ كُنْتُمْ صَادِقِينَ

Say: bring your proof, if you are truthful.

ii. تَعَالَيْنَ تَعَالِيَا تَعَالِي تَعَالُوا تَعَالِيَا تَعَالَ

e.g. قُلْ يَا أَهْلَ الْكِتَابِ تَعَالُوا إِلَى كَلِمَةٍ... الآية²¹

Say: O people of the book! Come to a word...

e.g. فَتَعَالَيْنَ أُمَتِّعُكَ وَأَسْرِحُكَ سَرَاحًا جَمِيلًا (القرآن)

Then, come, I will make provision for you and release you with kindness.

Section 2.4.5

أَسْمَاءُ الْأَصْوَاتِ – Isms that denote a sound

أُحُّ	To denote a cough.
أُفُّ	To denote pain.
بُحُّ	To denote happiness, pleasure.
نَحُّ	To make a camel sit.
غَاقٌ	To denote the cawing of a crow.

²¹ الآية is an abbreviation for إِلَى آخِرِ الْآيَةِ (until the end of the ayah).

Section 2.4.6²²

الظُّروفُ – Adverbs

Definition: An **ظَرْفٍ** is an **إِسْمٌ** which gives us an idea of the place or time when (or where) some work is done. It is also called **مَفْعُولٌ فِيهِ**.

ظُرُوفٌ are of two kinds: **ظَرْفُ الزَّمَانِ** (adverb of time) and **ظَرْفُ الْمَكَانِ** (the adverb of place).

ظُرُوفُ الزَّمَانِ – Adverbs of time:

1. إِذٍ (when)

- It gives the meaning of **الْمَاضِي** even when it appears before **مُضَارِعٌ**.
- The sentence after **إِذٍ** could be a **جُمْلَةٌ إِسْمِيَّةٌ** or a **جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ**.
e.g. **وَإِذْ كُنْتُمْ قَلِيلًا** Remember when you were less.
e.g. **وَإِذْ يَرْفَعُ إِبْرَاهِيمُ الْقَوَاعِدَ مِنَ الْبَيْتِ** And when Ibrahim (Allah give him peace) was raising the foundation of the House (Ka'ba).
- Sometimes, it gives the meaning of suddenness (**مُفَاجَأَةٌ**). This is called **إِذٌ الْفَجَائِيَّةُ**.
e.g. **خَرَجْتُ إِذْ مُدِيرُ الْمَدْرَسَةِ نَاطِرٌ** I came out and suddenly (encountered) the principal of the school watching.
- Sometimes, it gives the meaning of because (**لِأَنَّ**). This is called **إِذٌ التَّعْلِيلِيَّةُ**.
e.g. **لَنْ يَنْفَعَكُمْ الْيَوْمَ إِذْ ظَلَمْتُمْ أَنْفُسَكُمْ فِي الْعَذَابِ مُشْتَرِكُونَ (القرآن)**
That you are together in punishment will never benefit you today because you oppressed.
[This is according to one translation.]

2. إِذَا (when/if)

- It gives the meaning of **مُضَارِعٌ** even when it appears before **مَاضٍ**.
- It gives the meaning of **شَرْطٌ** and **جَزَاءٌ** but does not give either a **جَزْمٌ**.
- The sentence after **إِذَا** could be a **جُمْلَةٌ إِسْمِيَّةٌ** or preferably a **جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ**.
e.g. **أَتِيكَ إِذَا الشَّمْسُ طَالَعَةٌ** I will come to you when the sun is up.
e.g. **إِذَا نَزَلَ الْمَطَرُ فَارْجِعْ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ** If it rains, return home.

²² The list of **ظُرُوفٌ** given in this section is by no means exhaustive. There are many more that should be studied in advanced books of *Nahw*.

e.g. إِذَا جَاءَ نَصْرُ اللَّهِ وَالْفَتْحُ وَرَأَيْتَ النَّاسَ يَدْخُلُونَ فِي دِينِ اللَّهِ أَفْوَاجًا فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ وَاسْتَغْفِرْهُ
When the victory of Allah comes and the conquest, and you see people entering into the religion of Allah in multitudes, then celebrate the praise of your Lord and seek forgiveness from Him.

- Sometimes, it gives the meaning of suddenness (مُفَاجَأَةً), in which case إِذَا must be followed by a جُمْلَةٌ إِسْمِيَّةٌ.

e.g. خَرَجْتُ فَإِذَا الْكَلْبُ وَقِفْتُ I came out and suddenly (encountered) the dog standing.

3. مَتَى (when)

- It can be used as an interrogative (اسْتِفْهَامٌ).

e.g. مَتَى تُسَافِرُ؟ When will you travel?

- It can also be used as a conditional إِسْمٌ in which case the شَرْطٌ and جَزَاءٌ get a جَزْمٌ.

e.g. مَتَى تَصُومُ أَصُومُ When you fast, I will fast.

4. كَيْفَ (how)

- It is used to enquire condition.

e.g. كَيْفَ حَالُكَ؟ How are you? (In what condition are you?)

5. أَيَّانَ (when)

- It is used as an interrogative.

e.g. أَيَّانَ يَوْمُ الدِّينِ؟ When will be the day of recompense?

Note: أَيَّانَ is used only to enquire of great events of the future as compared to مَتَى.

6. أَمْسٍ (yesterday)

e.g. جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ أَمْسٍ Zayd came to me yesterday.

7. مُنْذُ - مُنْذُ (since, for)

- These two can be used to convey the beginning of a time period.

e.g. مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُ / مُنْذُ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ I have not seen him since Friday.

- They can also be used to refer to an entire time period.

e.g. مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُ / مُنْذُ يَوْمَيْنِ I have not seen him for two days.

- These can be used as حَرْفُ جَرٍّ (followed by a مَجْرُورٌ) **or** as اِسْمٌ which is regarded as a مَرْفُوعٌ followed by a مُبْتَدَأٌ.

e.g. مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُ/مُدَّ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ I have not seen him since Friday.
مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُ/مُدَّ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ

8. فَطٌ (not, never)

- It is used to emphasize اَلْمَاضِي الْمَنْفِي.

e.g. مَا صَرَبْتُهُ فَطٌ I never hit him.

9. عَوْضٌ (never)

- It is used to emphasize اَلْمُضَارِعُ الْمَنْفِي.

e.g. لَا أَصْرِبُهُ عَوْضٌ I will never hit him.

10. قَبْلٌ (before)

بَعْدٌ (after)

- They are مُعْرَبٌ when they are مُضَافٌ and the مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ is mentioned.

e.g. مِنْ قَبْلِ الْفَتْحِ before the victory

- They are مَبْنِيٌّ when they are مُضَافٌ and the مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ is not mentioned, but intended.

e.g. لِلَّهِ الْأَمْرُ مِنْ قَبْلُ وَمِنْ بَعْدُ (أَيُّ مِنْ قَبْلِ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ وَمِنْ بَعْدِ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ)

Allah's is the decision before and after (i.e. before everything and after everything).

e.g. أَنَا حَاضِرٌ مِنْ قَبْلُ (أَيُّ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ)

I have been present from before (i.e. before you).

e.g. مَتَى بَجِيئُنَا بَعْدُ؟ (أَيُّ بَعْدَ هَذَا)

When will you come after (i.e. after this)?

طُرُوفُ الْمَكَانِ – Adverbs of place:

1. حَيْثٌ (where)

- It is generally مُضَافٌ to a sentence.

e.g. اجْلِسْ حَيْثُ زَيْدٌ جَالِسٌ Sit where Zayd is sitting.

2. قُدَامُ (in front of) & خَلْفُ (behind)

- It has the same rules as those for قَبْلُ and بَعْدُ.

e.g. قَامَ النَّاسُ قُدَامَ وَخَلْفَ (أَيُّ قُدَامَهُ وَخَلْفَهُ)

The people stood in front and behind.

(i.e. in front of him and behind him).

3. تَحْتُ (under) & فَوْقُ (on top, above)

- It has the same rules as those for قَبْلُ and بَعْدُ.

e.g. جَلَسَ زَيْدٌ تَحْتُ وَعَمْرُو فَوْقُ (أَيُّ تَحْتِ الشَّجَرَةِ وَفَوْقَ الشَّجَرَةِ)

Zayd sat under and 'Amr above. (i.e. under the tree and above the tree.)

4. عِنْدَ (by, at, near, with)

e.g. الْمَالُ عِنْدَ زَيْدٍ The money is with Zayd.

Note: عِنْدَ will get a *kasrah* if it is preceded by مِنْ.

e.g. مِنْ عِنْدِ اللَّهِ from Allah

5. أَيْنَ/أَيْ (where)

- They are used for اسْتِفْهَامٌ.

e.g. أَيْنَ تَذْهَبُ - أَيْنَ تَذْهَبُ? Where are you going?

- They are used for شَرْطٌ (شَرْطٌ and جَزَاءٌ will get a جَزْمٌ).

e.g. أَيْنَ تَجْلِسُ أَجْلِسُ Where you sit, I will sit.

أَيْنَ تَجْلِسُ أَجْلِسُ

6. لَدَى/لَدُنْ (at, by, near, with (same meaning as عِنْدَ)).

e.g. الْمَالُ لَدَى زَيْدٍ The money is with Zayd.

مِنْ لَدُنْ حَكِيمٍ خَبِيرٍ from the All-Wise, All-Knowing

- لَدُنْ is generally preceded by مِنْ.
- When used in the meaning of possession (with), the difference between لَدَى/لَدُنْ and عِنْدَ is that in the case of لَدَى/لَدُنْ, the possessed thing must be present with the person; whereas, in the case of عِنْدَ, the possessed thing need not be present with the person.

Note: That adverb which is مُعْرَبٌ and is مُضَافٌ to a sentence or the word إِذْ, could be مَبْنِيٌّ عَلَى الْفَتْحِ or it could get the i'raab according to the غَامِلٌ.

e.g. the adverb يَوْمٌ which is مُضَافٌ in the following *ayahs*:

هَذَا يَوْمٌ يَنْفَعُ الصَّادِقِينَ صِدْقُهُمْ and هَذَا يَوْمٌ يَنْفَعُ الصَّادِقِينَ صِدْقُهُمْ

This is the day when the truth of the truthful will benefit them.

وَجُوهٌ يَوْمَئِذٍ and وُجُوهُ يَوْمَئِذٍ

faces on that day

EXERCISE

1. Translate the follows *ayahs* of the Qur'an and identify the ظُرُوفٌ in them. Also identify whether they are from among ظُرُوفُ الزَّمَانِ or ظُرُوفُ الْمَكَانِ.

- i. يَوْمٌ يَكُونُ النَّاسُ كَالْفَرَاشِ الْمَبْتُوثِ
- ii. وَمَا جَعَلْنَا لِبَشَرٍ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ الْخُلْدَ
- iii. فَسُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ حِينَ تُمْسُونَ وَحِينَ تُصْبِحُونَ
- iv. قَالَ فَإِنَّا قَدْ فَتَنَّا قَوْمَكَ مِنْ بَعْدِكَ
- v. إِذْ جَاءُوكُمْ مِنْ فَوْقِكُمْ
- vi. مَا عِنْدِي مَا تَسْتَعْجِلُونَ بِهِ
- vii. وَعَلَّمْنَاهُ مِنْ لَدُنَّا عِلْمًا
- viii. يَعْلَمُ مَا بَيْنَ أَيْدِيهِمْ وَمَا خَلْفَهُمْ
- ix. إِذْ يَقُولُ لِصَاحِبِهِ لَا تَحْزَنْ إِنَّ اللَّهَ مَعَنَا
- x. أَعَدَّ اللَّهُ لَهُمْ جَنَّاتٍ تَجْرِي مِنْ تَحْتِهَا الْأَنْهَارُ

Section 2.4.7

الكِنَايَاتُ – Isms that indicate an unspecified quantity

1. كَمَا، كَدَا (so many, so much, how many, how much)

- They can be used for numbers

e.g. كَمْ دِرْهَمًا عِنْدَكَ؟ How many silver coins do you have?

e.g. أَخَذْتُ كَدَا دِرْهَمًا I took this many silver coins.

- كَدَا is also used in the meaning of “such and such.”

e.g. قَالَ لِي كَدَا وَ كَدَا He said to me such and such.

2. كَيْتَ، دَيْتَ (so and so, such and such)

e.g. قُلْتُ كَيْتَ وَ دَيْتَ or قُلْتُ كَيْتَ دَيْتَ I said such and such.

e.g. فَعَلْتُ كَيْتَ وَ دَيْتَ or فَعَلْتُ كَيْتَ دَيْتَ I did such and such.

Section 2.4.8

الْمُرَكَّبُ الْبِنَائِيُّ – Numerical phrase

This has been discussed earlier. Please, refer to section 1.4.3.

Section 2.5

أقسام الأسماء المُعرَّبة – Types of declinable *isms*

These are of two types:

1. مُنْصَرَفٌ

Definition: It is an *ism* which does **not** have two causes from amongst the nine causes that prevent declension (أسباب منع الصَّرفِ) **or** one such cause, which is equivalent to two.

- It accepts all *harakaat* as well as *tanween*.

2. غَيْرُ مُنْصَرَفٍ

Definition: It is an *ism* which has two causes from amongst the nine causes that prevent declension (أسباب منع الصَّرفِ) **or** one such cause which is equivalent to two.

- Such an *ism* does not accept a *kasrah* and never gets a *tanween*. In حالة الجَرِّ, it gets a *fathah* in place of a *kasrah*.

أسباب منع الصَّرفِ²³

There are nine reasons/causes which prevent *i'raab* changes. Each one of these has its own conditions, which must exist for it to be a cause. The nine causes are as follows:

- | | | | | |
|--------------|---------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. عَدْلٌ | 2. وَصْفٌ | 3. عَلَمٌ | 4. تَأْنِيثٌ | 5. عَجْمَةٌ |
| 6. تَرْكِيبٌ | 7. أَلْفٌ وَتَوْنٌ زَائِدَتَانِ | 8. وَزْنٌ فِعْلٌ | 9. جَمْعٌ مُنْتَهَى الْجُمُوعِ | |

1. عَدْلٌ: It refers to the case when an *ism* gives up its original form to assume a new form.

عَدْلٌ is of two types:

- i. عَدْلٌ حَقِيقِيٌّ: It refers to the case when an *ism* has an original.

e.g. In the case of ثَلَاثٌ (three and three together), the original is ثَلَاثَةٌ وَثَلَاثَةٌ.

- ii. عَدْلٌ تَقْدِيرِيٌّ: It refers to the case when it is assumed that an *ism* had an original because it is used as غَيْرُ مُنْصَرَفٍ by the Arabs.

e.g. The Arabs use عُمَرُ as غَيْرُ مُنْصَرَفٍ. However, there is only one apparent cause, عَلَمٌ. Therefore, in order to keep the grammar rule intact, it is assumed that the second cause is عَدْلٌ and the original for عُمَرُ was عَامِرٌ.

²³ This discussion is based upon *Hidayat al-Nahw*. It is presented in an entirely different manner in *al-Nahw al-Wadiah*. See *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Ibtida'iyyah*, vol. 3, 125-133.

2. صِفَةٌ/وَصْفٌ: There can be two cases when an إِسْمٌ which is a صِفَةٌ would be *ghayr munsarif*.²⁴ These are as follows:

i. The صِفَةٌ was originally devised to give a descriptive (وَصْفِيٌّ) meaning. If such a صِفَةٌ is on the *wazn* of (أَفْعَلٌ), and does not accept *taa* for its مُؤَنَّثٌ, it will be *ghayr munsarif*.

e.g. أَحْمَرٌ red أَخْضَرٌ green

ii. The صِفَةٌ has رَائِدَاتَانِ أَلِفٌ وَ نُونٌ. Its conditions are given below in (7).

3. عَلْمٌ: It refers to the case when an إِسْمٌ is a proper noun (name of a person, place or thing).

e.g. فَاطِمَةٌ female name
حَضْرَمَوْتٌ name of a region in Yemen

4. تَأْنِيثٌ: It refers to the case when an إِسْمٌ is a feminine proper noun (عَلْمٌ) with one of the following characteristics:

- It ends with a round ة. For example, مَكَّةٌ²⁵ طَلْحَةٌ
- It does not end with a round ة and has more than three letters. For example, رَيْثَبٌ.
- It is a non-Arabic three-letter word and the middle letter is سَاكِنٌ. For example, مِصْرٌ.

Note:

- All *isms* ending in أَلِفٌ الْمَقْصُورَةٌ (اِ) or أَلِفٌ الْمَمْدُودَةٌ (اء) are feminine.
e.g. حُبْلَى pregnant
حَمْرَاءٌ red
- Presence of أَلِفٌ الْمَقْصُورَةٌ (اِ) or أَلِفٌ الْمَمْدُودَةٌ (اء) is **equivalent to two reasons**.

5. عُجْمَةٌ: It refers to the case when a word which is a proper noun (عَلْمٌ) in a non-Arabic language, has either

- more than three letters e.g. إِبْرَاهِيمٌ
- OR**
- has three letters and the middle letter is مُتَحَرِّكٌ. e.g. شَرٌّ (name of a fort)
- Thus, نُوحٌ is *munsarif* because its middle letter is not مُتَحَرِّكٌ.

²⁴ *Sharh ibn 'Aqil*, vol. 3, 322-324.

²⁵ Even though طَلْحَةٌ is a masculine proper noun, it is considered a feminine noun because of the presence of a round ة. For more discussion on the subject, see Section 3.4.

Note: The difference between نُوحٌ and مِصْرٌ is that مِصْرٌ is a feminine *ism* because of it being the name of a country, while نُوحٌ is not a feminine *ism*. Thus, مِصْرٌ is *ghayr munsarif* because of تَأْنِيثٌ and عَلَمٌ, while نُوحٌ is *munsarif* because it only has عَلَمٌ. عَجْمَةٌ does not apply to either.

6. تَرْكِيبٌ: It refers to the case when a word is a combination of two words. This word must be a proper noun (عَلَمٌ).

e.g. بَعْلَبَكُ name of a city in Lebanon
 حَضْرَمَوْتُ name of a region in Yemen

7. أَلِفٌ وَنُونٌ زَائِدَتَانِ: It refers to the case when an اسمٌ ends with an أَلِفٌ and نُونٌ (ـانِ) and one of the following is true:

i. The أَلِفٌ and نُونٌ appear at the end of a proper noun (عَلَمٌ).

e.g. عُمَرَانُ عِمْرَانُ

Note: Thus, the word سَعْدَانٌ (grass) is not *ghayr munsarif* because it is not a proper noun.

ii. The أَلِفٌ and نُونٌ appear at the end of such a صِفَةٌ whose feminine is **not** on the وَزْنٌ of فَعْلَانَةٌ.

e.g. سَكْرَانُ²⁶ intoxicated عَطْشَانُ²⁷ thirsty

Their feminines are **not** on the وَزْنٌ of فَعْلَانَةٌ.

Note: Thus, the word نَدْمَانٌ is not *ghayr munsarif* because its feminine (نَدْمَانَةٌ) is on the *wazn* of فَعْلَانَةٌ.

- If the أَلِفٌ and نُونٌ are not extra or added (i.e. not زَائِدَتَانِ) but are part of the original letters of the word, then it will not be *ghayr munsarif*. For example, شَيْطَانٌ.

²⁶ سَكْرَانٌ is mainly used as *ghayr munsarif* (without *tanween*), and is sometimes used as *munsarif* (with *tanween*). The reason is that it has two feminines. The main feminine is سَكْرَى, which requires that the masculine be *ghayr munsarif* (سَكْرَانٌ). However, in the dialect of Banu Asad, the feminine is سَكْرَانَةٌ. This requires that the masculine be *munsarif* (سَكْرَانٌ). See E. W. Lane, *An Arabic-English Lexicon*, (Beirut: Librairie du Liban, 1968), book I, part 4, 1391.

²⁷ عَطْشَانٌ is interchangeably used as *munsarif* (with *tanween*) and *ghayr munsarif* (without *tanween*). The reason is that it has two feminines. One is عَطْشَى, and the other is عَطْشَانَةٌ. Considering the first, it becomes *ghayr munsarif* (عَطْشَانٌ); and considering the second, it becomes *munsarif* (عَطْشَانٌ). See Lane, book I, part 5, 2079.

8. وَزْنُ فِعْلٍ: It refers to the case when a proper noun (عَلَمٌ) is on the *wazn* of a فِعْلٍ or when a صِفَةٌ is on the *wazn* of أَفْعَلٌ.

e.g. لَسْتَ بِأَسْبَقَ مِنْ أَحْمَدَ You are not more advanced/ahead than Ahmad.

Here, أَحْمَدَ is an عَلَمٌ and is on the *wazn* of the fi'l أَفْعَلٌ , and أَسْبَقَ is a صِفَةٌ and is on the *wazn* of the verb أَفْعَلٌ. Therefore, these two are *ghayr munsarif*.

e.g. جَاءَ يَزِيدُ Yazeed came.

Here, يَزِيدُ is an عَلَمٌ and is on the *wazn* of the fi'l يُفْعَلُ.

9. جَمْعٌ مُنْتَهَى الْجُمُوعِ: It is a plural which has, after the أَلِفُ الْجُمُوعِ (*alif* of plural), one of the following:

i. two مُتَحَرِّكَ letters.

e.g. مَسَاجِدُ mosques

ii. one مُشَدَّدٌ letter.

e.g. دَوَابُّ animals

iii. three letters, the middle letter being سَاكِنٌ.

e.g. مَفَاتِيحُ keys

Note:

- If any of the above words ends with a round ة, it will not be *ghayr munsarif*.

e.g. صَيَافِلَةٌ polishers

- جَمْعٌ مُنْتَهَى الْجُمُوعِ is equivalent to two reasons/causes.

General Note: A *ghayr munsarifism* will get a *kasrah* in حَالَةُ الْجَرِّ in the following cases:

- when it is مُضَافٌ. e.g. صَلَّيْتُ فِي مَسَاجِدِهِمْ I prayed in their mosques.
- when it has ال before it. e.g. دَهَبْتُ إِلَى الْمَقَابِرِ I went to the graves.

EXERCISES

1. Mention with reason why the following words are *munsarif* or *ghayr munsarif*.

i. زفر²⁸

v. صحراء

ii. شيطان

vi. مصاييح

iii. أسود

vii. يزيد

iv. أساتذة

viii. غضبان²⁹

²⁸ This is the name of a major Hanafi Imam. It is non-Arabic in origin and is pronounced with a *dammah* on the first letter and a *fathah* on the second letter.

²⁹ Its main feminine is عَضْبِي. In the dialect of Banu Asad, its feminine is عَضْبَانَةٌ. See Lane, book I, part 6, 2265.

2. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and point out with reason the words which are *ghayr munsarif*.

- i. مررت بعمر
- ii. ذهب أحمد مع زينب إلى مكة
- iii. لا تسئلوا عن أشياء... الآية
- iv. سقيت ولدا عطشان
- v. يا أهل يثرب... الآية
- vi. مررت بمساجد
- vii. شهر رمضان الذى أنزل فيه القرآن... الآية
- viii. إن الله اصطفى آدم ونوحا وأل إبراهيم وأل عمران على العالمين (القرآن)

Table 2.11
إِعْرَابُ أَقْسَامِ الْأَسْمَاءِ الْمُعْرَبَةِ

<i>Ism Type</i>	حَالَةُ الرَّفْعِ	حَالَةُ النَّصْبِ	حَالَةُ الْجَرِّ	Examples for each state
الْمُفْرَدُ الْمُنْصَرَفُ الصَّحِيحُ	ضَمَّةٌ	فَتْحَةٌ	كَسْرَةٌ	مَرَرْتُ بِزَيْدٍ رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا جَاءَ زَيْدٌ
الْمُفْرَدُ الْقَائِمُ مَقَامَ الصَّحِيحِ	ضَمَّةٌ	فَتْحَةٌ	كَسْرَةٌ	مَرَرْتُ بِطَبَّيْ رَأَيْتُ ظَبْيًا هَذَا ظَبِيٌّ
الْجَمْعُ الْمَكْسَرُ الْمُنْصَرَفُ	ضَمَّةٌ	فَتْحَةٌ	كَسْرَةٌ	قُلْتُ لِرِجَالٍ ³⁰ رَأَيْتُ رِجَالًا هُمْ رِجَالٌ
غَيْرُ الْمُنْصَرَفِ	ضَمَّةٌ	فَتْحَةٌ	فَتْحَةٌ	مَرَرْتُ بِعُمَرَ رَأَيْتُ عُمَرَ جَاءَ عُمَرُ
الأسماءُ السِّتَّةُ الْمُكْرَهَةُ				
a. When مُضَافٌ to any <i>ism</i> besides the <i>dameer</i> . ³¹	و	ا	ي	مَرَرْتُ بِأَيْتِكَ رَأَيْتُ أَبَاكَ جَاءَ أَبُوكَ
b. When مُضَافٌ to the <i>dameer</i> .	hidden	hidden	hidden	مَرَرْتُ بِأَبِي رَأَيْتُ أَبِي جَاءَ أَبِي
c. when not مُضَافٌ	ضَمَّةٌ	فَتْحَةٌ	كَسْرَةٌ	مَرَرْتُ بِأَبٍ رَأَيْتُ أَبَا جَاءَ أَبٌ
الْمُضَافُ إِلَى يَاءِ الْمُتَكَلِّمِ	hidden	hidden	hidden	مَرَرْتُ بِزَيْلِي رَأَيْتُ زَيْلِي جَاءَ زَيْلِي
الْإِسْمُ الْمُقْفُوضُ	hidden	hidden	hidden	مَرَرْتُ بِمُوسَى رَأَيْتُ مُوسَى جَاءَ مُوسَى
الإسمُ الْمَقْفُوضُ	مَعْرِفَةٌ	hidden	hidden	مَرَرْتُ بِالْقَاضِي رَأَيْتُ الْقَاضِي جَاءَ الْقَاضِي
	نَكْرَةٌ	hidden	hidden	مَرَرْتُ بِقَاضٍ رَأَيْتُ قَاضِيًا جَاءَ قَاضٍ
الْمُنْتَهَى	ـانِ	ـينِ	ـينِ	مَرَرْتُ بِرِجْلَيْنِ رَأَيْتُ رِجْلَيْنِ جَاءَ رِجْلَانِ
إِثْنَانٍ (masculine)	ـانِ	ـينِ	ـينِ	مَرَرْتُ بِإِثْنَيْنِ رَأَيْتُ إِثْنَيْنِ جَاءَ إِثْنَانِ
إِثْنَتَانِ (feminine)	ـانِ	ـينِ	ـينِ	مَرَرْتُ بِرِجْلَيْنِ رَأَيْتُ رِجْلَيْنِ جَاءَ رِجْلَانِ
كِلَا (masculine)	ـا	ـيِ	ـيِ	مَرَرْتُ بِكِلَيْهِمَا رَأَيْتُ كِلَيْهِمَا جَاءَ كِلَاهُمَا ³²
كِلْتَا (feminine)	ـا	ـيِ	ـيِ	مَرَرْتُ بِكِلَيْهِمَا رَأَيْتُ كِلَيْهِمَا جَاءَ كِلَاهُمَا ³²
(مُضَافٌ إِلَى الضَّمِيرِ)				

³⁰ I said to some men.

³¹ The م of فَمٌ is dropped when it is مُضَافٌ to any noun besides the *dameer*. For example, it is dropped in the following *hadith*: ... مَا تَجْعَلُ فِي فِي امْرَأَتِكَ... (Whatever you put in the mouth of your wife...)

³² Both of them.

Table 2.11 – *Continued*

<i>Ism Type</i>	حَالَةُ الرَّفْعِ	حَالَةُ النَّصْبِ	حَالَةُ الْجَرِّ	Examples for each state		
جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّلَامِ	ـَاتٍ	ـَاتٍ	ـَاتٍ	هُنَّ مُسْلِمَاتٌ	رَأَيْتُ مُسْلِمَاتٍ	مَرَرْتُ بِمُسْلِمَاتٍ
جَمْعُ الْمُدَكَّرِ السَّلَامِ	ـُونَ	ـِينَ	ـِينَ	جَاءَ مُسْلِمُونَ	رَأَيْتُ مُسْلِمِينَ	مَرَرْتُ بِمُسْلِمِينَ
عِشْرُونَ إِلَى تِسْعُونَ – سِنُونَ	ـُونَ	ـِينَ	ـِينَ	جَاءَ عِشْرُونَ رَجُلًا	رَأَيْتُ عِشْرِينَ رَجُلًا	مَرَرْتُ بِعِشْرِينَ رَجُلًا
أَوْلُو (plural of ذُو)	ـُو	ـِي	ـِي	جَاءَ أَوْلُو مَالٍ	رَأَيْتُ أَوْلِي مَالٍ	مَرَرْتُ بِأَوْلِي مَالٍ
جَمْعُ الْمُدَكَّرِ السَّلَامِ (مُضَافٌ إِلَى يَاءِ الْمُتَكَلِّمِ)	hidden	ـِي	ـِي	هَؤُلَاءِ مُسْلِمِي ³³	رَأَيْتُ مُسْلِمِي ³⁴	مَرَرْتُ بِمُسْلِمِي

EXERCISE³⁵

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and identify which rule from among those given in Table 2.11, is applicable.
 - i. نَجَى الْفَتَى مِنَ الْغَرَقِ
 - ii. الْاِقْتِصَادُ سَبِيلُ الْغِنَى
 - iii. نَحْرَمُ الْقَاضِي
 - iv. نَادَيْتُ الْعَامِلِينَ
 - v. كَانَ التَّلَامِيذُ مِنْتَبِهِينَ
 - vi. هَجَمَ الثَّعْلَبُ عَلَى الدَّجَاجَاتِ
 - vii. اغْسَلْ فَاكَ بَعْدَ كُلِّ طَعَامٍ

³³ مُسْلِمِي was originally مُسْلِمُونِي. First, the ن was dropped because of إِضَافَةٌ. It became مُسْلِمُونِي. Then, the و was changed to a ي and the two were joined according to the following morphological (صَرْفِي) rule: “when a و and a ي appear together and the first is سَاكِرٌ, then the و is changed to a ي, and the two ي are joined (this is called إِدْعَامٌ), and the *dammah* before the و is changed into a *kasrah*.” Thus, it became مُسْلِمِي.

³⁴ مُسْلِمِي was originally مُسْلِمِينِي. First, the ن was dropped because of إِضَافَةٌ. It became مُسْلِمِينِي. Then, the two ي were joined (إِدْعَامٌ). Thus, it became مُسْلِمِي.

³⁵ For more exercises, refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 2, 13-51 & 83-94.

CHAPTER 3

Further discussion of *isms*

Section 3.1

الْإِسْمُ الْمَنْسُوبُ – Relative adjective

Definition: It is that *ism* which shows something or someone to be related to it.

e.g.	بَغْدَادِيٌّ	someone or something from Baghdad
	صَرْفِيٌّ	an expert in morphology
	نَحْوِيٌّ	an expert in Arabic grammar
	هِنْدِيٌّ	someone or something from India

Rules for creating الْإِسْمُ الْمَنْسُوبُ:

To show this relation, a *ياء* (يَاءُ التَّسْبِيَةِ الْمَشَدَّدَةُ) preceded by a *kasrah* is added at the end of the *ism* after affecting the following changes, if needed:

1. If a three-letter or a four-letter *ism* ends with an *أَلِفٌ مَّقْصُورَةٌ* (أ), then *أَلِفٌ مَّقْصُورَةٌ* (أ) should be changed to a *و*.

e.g. عَيْسِيٌّ becomes عَيْسَوِيٌّ

Note: In the case of a five-letter *ism*, the *أَلِفٌ مَّقْصُورَةٌ* (أ) should be dropped.

e.g. مُصْطَفَىٌّ becomes مُصْطَفِيٌّ

2. If an *ism* ends with an *أَلِفٌ مَمْدُودَةٌ* (اء), then the *ء* should be changed to a *و*.

e.g. سَمَاءٌ becomes سَمَآوِيٌّ

3. That *ism* which already ends with a *ي* does not require *يَاءُ التَّسْبِيَةِ*.

e.g. شَافِعِيٌّ would remain as is.

4. The round *ة* at the end of an *ism* should be dropped.

e.g. مَكَّةٌ becomes مَكِّيٌّ فَاطِمَةٌ becomes فَاطِمِيٌّ

5. The round *ة* and *ي* of an *ism* which appears on the *وَزْنٌ* of *فَعِيلَةٌ* and *فُعَيْلَةٌ* should be dropped.

e.g. مَدِينَةٌ becomes مَدِينِيٌّ جَهَنِمَةٌ becomes جَهَنِمِيٌّ

6. In case of the *إِسْمٌ* which appears on the *وَزْنٌ* of *فَعِيلٌ* and ends with a *ي*, the first *ي* should be changed to a *و* preceded by a *fathah*, and the second *ي* should be dropped.

e.g. *عَلِيٌّ* (*عَلِيٌّ*) becomes *عَلَوِيٌّ*

7. If the fourth letter of an *إِسْمٌ* is a *ي* preceded by a *kasrah*, then the *ي* can be dropped or it can be changed to a *و*.

e.g. *دِهْلِيٌّ* becomes *دِهْلِيٌّ* or *دِهْلَوِيٌّ*

8. If an original letter from the end of an *إِسْمٌ* was dropped, it should first be brought back, and then, the *إِسْمٌ مَنْسُوبٌ* should be made.

e.g. *أَبٌ* (originally *أَبُو*) becomes *أَبَوِيٌّ*
أَخٌ (originally *أَخُو*) becomes *أَخَوِيٌّ*
دَمٌ (originally *دَمُو*) becomes *دَمَوِيٌّ*

9. Some words do not follow any particular rule. They are based on usage.

e.g. *نُورٌ* becomes *نُورَائِيٌّ* *حَقٌّ* becomes *حَقَّائِيٌّ*

EXERCISE

1. Form the *إِسْمٌ مَنْسُوبٌ* from the following words.

i. *نَبِيٌّ*

iv. *مَوْسَى*

ii. *مِصْرٌ*

v. *كُوفَةٌ*

iii. *بَيْضَاءٌ*

Section 3.2

الْإِسْمُ التَّصْغِيرُ – Diminutive *ism*

Definition: It is an *ism* which is used to express the diminutive form of an *ism*. Sometimes, the purpose is to show affection or contempt.

Rules:

1. A three-letter *ism* would come on the *wazn* of **فُعَيْلٌ** (or **فُعَيْلَةٌ** for feminine).

e.g. رَجُلٌ becomes رَجِيْلٌ (a little man)
عَبْدٌ becomes عَبِيْدٌ (a little slave)

2. A four-letter *ism* would come on the *wazn* of **فُعَيْعِلٌ**.

e.g. جَعْفَرٌ becomes جُعَيْفِرٌ

3. A five-letter *ism* without a و, ا or ي as the fourth, would also come on the *wazn* of **فُعَيْعِلٌ**.
The fifth letter would be dropped.

e.g. سَقْرَجَلٌ (name of a plant) becomes سُقَيْرٌ

A five-letter *ism* having a و, ا or ي as the fourth letter, would come on the scale of **فُعَيْعِيْلٌ**.

e.g. قِرْطَاسٌ (paper) becomes قُرَيْطِيْسٌ

Notes:

1. In the diminutive form, the hidden ة of a **مُؤَنِّتٌ سَمَاعِيٌّ** becomes apparent.

e.g. شَمْسٌ becomes شَمِيْسَةٌ

2. In the diminutive form, the last letter of an *ism* which has been dropped becomes apparent.

e.g. اِبْنٌ (originally **بَنُو**) becomes بُيٌّ

(بُنِيٌّ was originally **بُنِيُو**, and underwent a morphological process to become بُيٌّ)

EXERCISE

1. Form the diminutive *ism* from the following words.

- | | |
|------------|---------|
| i. عقرب | iv. كلب |
| ii. سلطان | v. أرض |
| iii. عصفور | vi. قمر |

Section 3.3

أَلْمَعْرِفَةُ وَالنَّكِرَةُ – Definite and indefinite *isms*

أَلنَّكِرَةُ (indefinite *ism*): It is an *إِسْمٌ* which denotes something unspecified.

e.g. رَجُلٌ a man

أَلْمَعْرِفَةُ (definite *ism*): It is an *إِسْمٌ* which denotes something specific. There are seven types of *مَعْرِفَةٌ*.

1. ضَمِيرٌ : It is a personal pronoun. It has been discussed earlier in Section 2.4.1.

2. عَلَمٌ : It is a proper noun, i.e. the name of a specific person, place or thing.

e.g. زَيْدٌ مَكَّةُ زَفْرَمٌ

3. إِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ : It is the demonstrative *إِسْمٌ*. It has been discussed earlier in section 2.4.3.

4. الْإِسْمُ الْمَوْصُولُ : It is the relative pronoun. It has been discussed earlier in Section 2.4.2.

5. الْمَعْرِفُ بِاللَّامِ : It is an *إِسْمٌ* which has ال (definite particle) at the beginning.

e.g. الرَّجُلُ the man

6. That indefinite *ism* (نَكِرَةٌ) which is *mudaaf* to any of the above five definite *isms*.

e.g. كِتَابُكَ كِتَابُ زَيْدٍ
كِتَابُ الَّذِي كِتَابُ هَذَا الرَّجُلِ
كِتَابُ الرَّجُلِ

7. حَرْفُ نِدَاءٍ : It is the vocative *إِسْمٌ*, i.e. an *إِسْمٌ* which appears after a *حَرْفُ نِدَاءٍ*.

e.g. يَا رَجُلُ

EXERCISE

1. Which of the following words are *ma'rifah* (state what type) and which are *nakirah*.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| i. الفرس | v. مكة |
| ii. نحن | vi. ذلك |
| iii. سيارة الذي | vii. سمك |
| iv. يا ولد | viii. سيف الرجل |

Section 3.4

الإِسْمُ الْمُدَكَّرُ وَالْمُؤَنَّثُ – Masculine and feminine *ism*

الإِسْمُ الْمُدَكَّرُ - Masculine *ism*: It is an *ism* which does not have any sign from amongst the signs of femininity (عَلَامَاتُ التَّأْنِيثِ).

الإِسْمُ الْمُؤَنَّثُ - Feminine *ism*: It is an *ism* which has a sign from amongst the signs of femininity. This sign could be apparent or hidden.

عَلَامَاتُ التَّأْنِيثِ: The signs of being feminine are of two types:

1. لَفْظِيّ (in words): It is a sign which is visible in words. These signs are of the following three types:
 - ة: This renders the word *الإِسْمُ الْمُؤَنَّثُ* even if the ة appears in a masculine proper noun. e.g. سَيَّارَةٌ طَلْحَةُ (a masculine proper noun)
 - (ى) الأَلِفُ الْمُقْصُورَةُ e.g. صُعْرَى حُبْلَى
 - (اء) الأَلِفُ الْمَمْدُودَةُ e.g. حَمْرَاءُ بَيْضَاءُ

If a word has any of these three signs it will be *الإِسْمُ الْمُؤَنَّثُ*.

2. تَقْدِيرِيّ (assumed): It is a sign which is not visible in words and is assumed to exist. This is determined by looking at the diminutive form (تَصْغِيرٌ) of a particular word. This reveals the original letters of the word.

e.g. أَرْضٌ The diminutive form is أَرْضِيَّةٌ. Therefore, it is *الإِسْمُ الْمُؤَنَّثُ*.
شَمْسٌ The diminutive form is شَمْسِيَّةٌ. Therefore, it is *الإِسْمُ الْمُؤَنَّثُ*.

Based on the signs of femininity being لَفْظِيّ or تَقْدِيرِيّ, *الإِسْمُ الْمُؤَنَّثُ* is of two types:

1. *الْمُؤَنَّثُ الْقِيَاسِيّ* (according to rule): It is a feminine *ism* which has a لَفْظِيّ sign of femininity.
2. *الْمُؤَنَّثُ السَّمَاعِيّ* (according to usage): It is a feminine *ism* which has a تَقْدِيرِيّ sign of femininity.

In terms of *ذَاتٌ* (essence), *الإِسْمُ الْمُؤَنَّثُ* is of two types:

1. *مُؤَنَّثٌ حَقِيقِيّ*: It is a feminine *ism* which has an opposite masculine. e.g. امْرَأَةٌ (woman). Its masculine is رَجُلٌ (man).
2. *مُؤَنَّثٌ لَفْظِيّ*: It is a feminine *ism* which does not have an opposite masculine. e.g. ظُلْمَةٌ (darkness) عَيْنٌ (eye)

Section 3.5

وَاحِدٌ وَتَثْنِيَّةٌ وَجَمْعٌ – Singular, dual and plural

وَاحِدٌ – Singular: It is an *ism* which denotes one of something.

e.g. رَجُلٌ one man

تَثْنِيَّةٌ – Dual: It is an *ism* which denotes two of something. It is formed by placing at the end of a singular (وَاحِدٌ) one of the following:

- An **ألفٌ** preceded by a *fathah* and followed by a **نُونٌ** with a *kasrah* i.e. [ـَانِ] for **حَالَةُ الرَّفْعِ**.
(ألفٌ مَا قَبْلَهَا مُفْتُوحٌ وَبَعْدَهَا نُونٌ مَكْسُورَةٌ)

e.g. رَجُلَانِ two men

- A **يَاءٌ** preceded by a *fathah* and followed by a **نُونٌ** with a *kasrah* i.e. [ـَيْنِ] for **حَالَةُ النَّصْبِ**.
(يَاءٌ مَا قَبْلَهَا مُفْتُوحٌ وَبَعْدَهَا نُونٌ مَكْسُورَةٌ). وَالْجَرِّ

e.g. رَجُلَيْنِ two men

جَمْعٌ – Plural: It is an *ism* which denotes more than two of something.

e.g. رِجَالٌ men

Note: The **نُونٌ** of **تَثْنِيَّةٌ** and **جَمْعٌ** is dropped in case of **إِضَافَةٌ**.

e.g. قَلَمًا زَيْدٍ (Originally قَلَمَانِ زَيْدٍ but the **نُونٌ** was dropped due to **إِضَافَةٌ**.)

فَرَسًا رَجُلٍ (Originally فَرَسَانِ رَجُلٍ but the **نُونٌ** was dropped due to **إِضَافَةٌ**.)

مُسْلِمُونَ مِصْرَ (Originally مُسْلِمُونَ مِصْرَ but the **نُونٌ** was dropped due to **إِضَافَةٌ**.)

طَالِبُونَ عِلْمٍ (Originally طَالِبُونَ عِلْمٍ but the **نُونٌ** was dropped due to **إِضَافَةٌ**.)

EXERCISE

1. Translate the following into Arabic.

- The boy's two bicycles.
- The farmer's two servants.
- Your parents came.
- I saw your parents.
- The servants of *deen*.
- The teachers of the school.

Section 3.6

أقسامُ الجُمع – Types of plural

الجُمعُ السَّالمُ – Sound plural: It is a plural whose *صِبْغَةٌ* (letter sequence/form) of *وَاحِدٌ* does not change when its plural is made. In other words, the singular letter sequence does not break.

e.g. مُسْلِمُونَ (singular – مُسْلِمٌ)

There are two types of *الجُمعُ السَّالمُ*:

1. *جَمْعُ مُذَكَّرٍ سَالِمٌ* – Masculine sound plural: It is formed by adding at the end of a singular (*وَاحِدٌ*) one of the following:

- A *وَإٍ* preceded by a *dammah* and followed by a *نُونٌ* with a *fathah* i.e. [نُونٌ] for

(وَإٍ مَا قَبْلَهَا مَضْمُومٌ وَبَعْدَهَا نُونٌ مُفْتُوحَةٌ). حَالَةُ الرَّفْعِ

e.g. مُسْلِمُونَ

- A *يَاءٌ* preceded by a *kasrah* and followed by a *نُونٌ* with a *fathah* i.e. [يُونٌ] for

(يَاءٌ مَا قَبْلَهَا مَكْسُورٌ وَبَعْدَهَا نُونٌ مُفْتُوحَةٌ). حَالَةُ النَّصْبِ وَالْجَرِّ

e.g. مُسْلِمِينَ

2. *جَمْعُ مُؤَنَّثٍ سَالِمٌ* – Feminine sound plural: It is formed by discarding the round *ة* and adding at the end of a singular one of the following:

- An *أَلْفٌ* preceded by a *fathah* and followed by a *madmoom* long *ت* i.e. [أَلْفَاتٌ] for

(أَلْفٌ مَا قَبْلَهَا مُفْتُوحٌ وَبَعْدَهَا تَاءٌ مَضْمُومَةٌ). حَالَةُ الرَّفْعِ

e.g. مُسْلِمَاتٌ

- An *أَلْفٌ* preceded by a *fathah* and followed by a *maksoor* long *ت* i.e. [أَلْفَاتٍ] for

(أَلْفٌ مَا قَبْلَهَا مُفْتُوحٌ وَبَعْدَهَا تَاءٌ مَكْسُورَةٌ). حَالَةُ النَّصْبِ وَالْجَرِّ

e.g. مُسْلِمَاتٍ

الجُمعُ المَكْسُرُ – Broken plural: It is a plural whose *صِبْغَةٌ* (the singular letter sequence/form) of *وَاحِدٌ* changes when its plural is made. In other words, the singular letter sequence breaks.

e.g. رِجَالٌ (singular – رَجُلٌ)

جَمْعٌ قَلَّةٌ – Restricted Plural: It is a plural which denotes a number from three to ten. It has four common أَوْزَانٌ.

Table 3.1
أَوْزَانُ جَمْعِ قَلَّةٍ

Wazn	Examples		
	Singular	Meaning	Plural
أَفْعَلٌ	نَفْسٌ	self	أَنْفُسٌ
أَفْعَالٌ	قَوْلٌ	statement	أَقْوَالٌ
أَفْعَلَةٌ	طَعَامٌ	food	أَطْعَمَةٌ
فِعْلَةٌ	عِلْمٌ	boy	عِلْمَةٌ

Note: The masculine and feminine sound plural, which is **not** preceded by an ال is also considered جَمْعٌ قَلَّةٌ.

e.g. عَاقِلَاتٌ intelligent females عَاقِلُونَ intelligent males

جَمْعٌ كَثْرَةٌ – Unrestricted Plural: It is a plural which denotes a number from three upwards. Some of the common أَوْزَانٌ are given below.

Table 3.2
أَوْزَانُ جَمْعِ كَثْرَةٍ

Wazn	Examples		
	Singular	Meaning	Plural
فِعَالٌ	عَبْدٌ	slave	عِبَادٌ
فُعَلَاءٌ	عَلِيمٌ	knowledgeable	عُلَمَاءٌ
أَفْعِلَاءٌ	نَبِيٌّ	prophet	أَنْبِيَاءٌ
فُعُلٌ	رَسُولٌ	messenger	رُسُلٌ
فُعُولٌ	نَجْمٌ	star	نُجُومٌ
فُعَالٌ	خَادِمٌ	servant	خُدَّامٌ
فَعْلَى	مَرِيضٌ	patient	مَرَضَى
فَعَلَةٌ	طَالِبٌ	student	طَلَبَةٌ
فِعْلٌ	فِرْقَةٌ	group/sect	فِرَقٌ
فِعْلَانٌ	عِلْمٌ	boy	عِلْمَانٌ

Note: The masculine and feminine sound plural which is preceded by an ال is also considered as جَمْعٌ كَثْرَةٌ.

e.g. الْمُسْلِمَاتُ الْمُسْلِمُونَ

جَمْعُ الْجَمْعِ – Plural of a plural: It is the plural of a plural. Sometimes, it appears on the *wazn* of مُنْتَهَى الْجَمْعِ and sometimes on the *wazn* of الْجَمْعُ السَّامِ. Not every plural has a plural. Some examples of plurals which have a plural are given below.

Table 3.3
أمثلة جمع الجمع

Singular	Meaning	Plural	Plural of plural
نِعْمَةٌ	blessing	أَنْعَمٌ	أَنْعَامٌ
ظُفْرٌ	nail	أَظْفِرٌ	أَظْفِيرٌ
بَيْتٌ	house	بُيُوتٌ	بُيُوتَاتٌ
فَاضِلٌ	well-qualified	أَفَاضِلٌ	أَفَاضِلُونَ

مُنْتَهَى الْجَمْعِ: It is a plural which has after the أَلِفُ الْجَمْعِ (*alif* of plural), one of the following:

- two مُتَحَرِّكَ letters. e.g. مَسَاجِدُ
- one مُسَدَّدٌ letter. e.g. دَوَابُّ (the original being دَوَابِبٌ)
- three letters, the middle one being سَاكِنٌ. e.g. مَفَاتِيحُ

Some of the common *wazns* of مُنْتَهَى الْجَمْعِ are given below:

Table 3.4
أوزان منتهى الجموع

Wazn	Examples		
	Singular	Meaning	Plural
مَفَاعِلُ	مَسْجِدٌ	mosque	مَسَاجِدُ
مَفَاعِلُ	مِفْتَاحٌ	key	مَفَاتِيحُ
فَوَاعِلُ	قَاعِدَةٌ	rule/maxim	قَوَاعِدُ
فَعَائِلُ	رِسَالَةٌ	message/letter	رِسَائِلُ
أَفَاعِلُ	أَكْبَرٌ	elder	أَكْبَارٌ

إِسْمُ الْجَمْعِ – Collective ism:³⁶ It is a singular **إِسْمٌ** which conveys a plural meaning. Generally, it does not have a singular from the same word.

e.g. قَوْمٌ nation
رَهْطٌ group

Note:

1. These words have plurals.

e.g. قَوْمٌ → أَقْوَامٌ رَهْطٌ → أَرْهَاطٌ

2. In usage, if the **word** is considered, it will be used as a singular **إِسْمٌ**.

e.g. الْقَوْمُ حَاضِرٌ The people are present.

If its **meaning** is considered (as is commonly done), it will be used as a plural **إِسْمٌ**.

e.g. قَوْمٌ صَالِحُونَ righteous people

Notes:

1. Some plurals do not have the same root letters as their singulars.

e.g. اِمْرَأَةٌ (woman) → نِسَاءٌ
ذُو (the one who possesses something) → أَوْلَادٌ

2. Some plurals are not according to rule (خِلَافُ الْقِيَاسِ).

e.g. أُمٌّ (mother) → أُمَّهَاتٌ
فَمٌّ (mouth) → أَفْوَاهٌ
مَاءٌ (water) → مِيَاهٌ
إِنْسَانٌ (human being) → أَنْسَاءٌ
شَاةٌ (goat/sheep) → شِيَاهٌ

إِسْمُ الْجِنْسِ – Generic ism:³⁷ It is an **إِسْمٌ** which is devised for an essence (مَاهِيَةٌ). Because of that, it refers to an entire genus (category/class). Generally, its singular has a (ة). For example,

شَجَرٌ refers to trees. Its singular is شَجْرَةٌ (a tree).

نَخْلٌ refers to date-palm trees. Its singular is نَخْلَةٌ (a date-palm tree).

³⁶ For more details, please refer to 'Abd al-Ghaniyy al-Daqr, *Mu'jam al-Qawa'id al-'Arabiyyah fi al-Nahw wa al-Tasreef* (Damascus: Dar al-Qalam, 1986), 36.

³⁷ For more details, please refer to *Mu'jam al-Qawa'id al-'Arabiyyah*, 36.

EXERCISE

1. What type of plurals are the following?

- | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| i. صائمت | ii. جيش | iii. أكلب |
| iv. مصايح | v. بلاد | vi. كتب |
| vii. صائمون | viii. إيل | ix. غنم |

Section 3.7

المَرْفُوعَاتُ - Words that are always *marfoo'*

There are eight words that are always in the state of رَفْعٌ. These are as follows:

1. فَاعِلٌ
2. نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ
3. مُبْتَدَأٌ
4. خَبْرٌ
5. خَبْرٌ إِنَّ وَأَخَوَاتَهَا
6. اِسْمٌ كَانَ وَأَخَوَاتَهَا
7. اِسْمٌ مَا وَلَا الْمُسْتَبْهَتَيْنِ بَلَيْسَ
8. خَبْرٌ لَا الَّتِي لِنَفْيِ الْجِنْسِ

Some of these have been discussed before. مُبْتَدَأٌ (subject) and خَبْرٌ (predicate) were discussed in Section 1.4.1, خَبْرٌ إِنَّ وَأَخَوَاتَهَا was discussed in Section 1.8, and اِسْمٌ كَانَ وَأَخَوَاتَهَا was discussed in Section 1.9. We discuss the rest below.

Section 3.7.1

فَاعِلٌ – Subject/Doer

Definition: It is the doer of the action or of the meaning contained in the فِعْلٌ.

- The فَاعِلٌ can either be a personal pronoun or an اِسْمٌ ظَاهِرٌ (i.e. visible in words after the فِعْلٌ). We have discussed personal pronouns before in Section 2.4.1. Now, we will discuss what the فِعْلٌ should be for various types of فَاعِلٌ.

Table 3.5
اِسْتِعْمَالُ الْفِعْلِ حَسَبَ الْفَاعِلِ

If the فَاعِلٌ is	Then the فِعْلٌ will be	Example
1. ظَاهِرٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَقِيقِيٌّ and there is no word between the فِعْلٌ and the فَاعِلٌ.	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ	قَامَتْ عَائِشَةُ
2. ضَمِيرٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ	مُؤَنَّثٌ and its singularity, duality, or plurality will be according to the preceding <i>ism</i> that it refers to.	الْمُعَلِّمَةُ نَصَرَتْ - الْمُعَلِّمَتَانِ نَصَرَتَا - الْمُعَلِّمَاتُ نَصَرْنَ
3. ظَاهِرٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ حَقِيقِيٌّ and there is a word between the فِعْلٌ and the فَاعِلٌ.	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ or وَاحِدٌ مُذَكَّرٌ	قَرَأَ الْيَوْمَ عَائِشَةُ or قَرَأَتِ الْيَوْمَ عَائِشَةُ
4. ظَاهِرٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ غَيْرٌ حَقِيقِيٌّ	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ or وَاحِدٌ مُذَكَّرٌ	طَلَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ or طَلَعَ الشَّمْسُ
5. ظَاهِرٌ جَمْعٌ مُكَسَّرٌ	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ or وَاحِدٌ مُذَكَّرٌ	قَالَتِ الرِّجَالُ or قَالَ الرِّجَالُ

Table 3.5 – *Continued*

If the فَاعِلٌ is	Then the فِعْلٌ will be	Example
6. any إِسْمٌ ظَاهِرٌ beside the above five categories	وَاحِدٌ corresponding in gender	ضَرَبَ الرَّجُلُ - ضَرَبَ الرَّجُلَانِ - ضَرَبَ الرَّجَالُ
7. ضَمِيرٌ مُذَكَّرٌ	مُذَكَّرٌ and its singularity, duality, or plurality will be according to the preceding إِسْمٌ that it refers to	الْحَادِمُ ذَهَبَ - الْحَادِمَانِ ذَهَبَا - الْحَادِمُونَ ذَهَبُوا
8. جَمْعٌ مُكَسَّرٌ that refers to ضَمِيرٌ	وَاحِدٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ or جَمْعٌ مُذَكَّرٌ	الرِّجَالُ قَامَتْ or الرِّجَالُ قَامُوا

EXERCISE

1. Fill in a suitable فِعْلٌ in the spaces below.

i. _____ الولدان

ii. الطلابُ _____/_____

iii. النساءُ _____

iv. السفينة _____/_____

v. _____/_____ الأطفال

vi. اليوم امرأة _____/_____

Section 3.7.2

فَاعِلٌ – مَفْعُولٌ مَا لَمْ يُسَمَّ فَاعِلُهُ / نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ

Definition: It is an اسمٌ which is the فَاعِلٌ of a مَفْعُولٌ (passive voice). The original فَاعِلٌ is dropped and the نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ substitutes it. This is why, it is called نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ (substitute of فَاعِلٌ) or مَفْعُولٌ مَا لَمْ يُسَمَّ فَاعِلُهُ (the مَفْعُولٌ of such a فِعْلٌ whose فَاعِلٌ is not mentioned).

e.g. نُصِرَ زَيْدٌ Zayd was helped. (The doer is not known/mentioned.)

The same فَاعِلٌ – فِعْلٌ usage rules apply as mentioned above in Table 3.5.

- e.g.
1. نُصِرَتْ عَائِشَةُ
 2. عَائِشَةُ نُصِرَتْ
 3. نُصِرَ الْيَوْمَ عَائِشَةُ or نُصِرَتْ الْيَوْمَ عَائِشَةُ
 4. رُئِيَ الشَّمْسُ or رُئِيَتِ الشَّمْسُ
 5. ضُرِبَ الرِّجَالُ or ضُرِبَتِ الرِّجَالُ
 6. ضُرِبَ الرَّجُلُ or ضُرِبَ الرَّجُلَانِ or ضُرِبَ الرِّجَالُ
 7. اَلْحَادِمُونَ طَلَبُوا or اَلْحَادِمَانِ طَلَبَا or اَلْحَادِمُ طَلَبَ
 8. اَلرِّجَالُ ضُرِبُوا or اَلرِّجَالُ ضُرِبَتْ

Sentence Analysis:

<u>البابُ</u>	<u>فُتِحَ</u>	The door was opened.
نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ	فِعْلٌ مَجْهُولٌ	

EXERCISE

1. Convert the following to فِعْلٌ مَجْهُولٌ with its نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| i. سرق اللص المال | iii. نعبد الله |
| ii. فتح زيد الأبواب | iv. ذبح الرجل الشاة |

2. Convert the following to مَفْعُولٌ – فَاعِلٌ – فِعْلٌ.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| i. تُحَلَبُ البقرة | iii. سُئِلَ المعلم |
| ii. قُطِعَتِ الزهرة | iv. شُرِبَ اللبن |

Section 3.7.4³⁹

حَبَّرُ لَا الَّتِي لِنَفْيِ الْجِنْسِ – The حَبَّرُ of that لَا which negates an entire جنْسٌ (category/class)

- لَا gives its إِسْمٌ a single *fathah* and its حَبَّرُ a *dammah* when the إِسْمٌ and the حَبَّرُ are نَكْرَةٌ.

e.g. لَا رَجُلًا قَائِمًا No man is standing.

Table 3.6

Different forms of the *ism* of لَا and its *i'raab*

	If the إِسْمٌ of لَا is	Then it will be	Explanation	Example
1.	شِبْهُ الْمُصَافِ or مُصَافٌ ⁴⁰	مَنْصُوبٌ		لَا خَادِمَ رَجُلٍ فِي الدَّارِ There is no servant of a man in the house. لَا سَاعِيًّا حَيْرًا مَذْمُومًا No one who attempts to do good is blameworthy.
2.	نَكْرَةٌ مُفْرَدَةٌ	مَبْنِيٌّ عَلَى الْفَتْحِ		لَا رَجُلًا فِي الدَّارِ There is no man in the house.
3.	مَعْرِفَةٌ	مَرْفُوعٌ	- The لَا has to be repeated with another مَعْرِفَةٌ. - The effect of لَا is cancelled.	لَا زَيْدٌ فِي الدَّارِ وَلَا عَمْرٌو Neither is Zayd in the house nor 'Amr.
4.	نَكْرَةٌ with a word between it and لَا	مَرْفُوعٌ	- The لَا has to be repeated. - The effect of لَا is cancelled.	لَا فِيهَا رَجُلٌ وَلَا امْرَأَةٌ Neither is there a man in it nor a woman.
5.	لَا and نَكْرَةٌ repeated with no word between them	فَتْحُهُمَا رَفْعُهُمَا فَتْحُ الْأَوَّلِ وَنَصْبُ الثَّانِي فَتْحُ الْأَوَّلِ وَرَفْعُ الثَّانِي رَفْعُ الْأَوَّلِ وَفَتْحُ الثَّانِي		لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ ⁴¹ لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ

³⁹ For more details, examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Thanawiyyah*, vol. 1, 118-122.

⁴⁰ It refers to the case when a word is connected to another word, which completes its meaning, in the same way that *mudaaf* and *mudaaf ilayhi* are connected to one another.

⁴¹ There is no power (to do good) and there is no power (to stay away from evil)[except with Allah's help].

Note: The حَرِّ of لَا may be omitted when the meaning is understood.

e.g. لَا بَأْسَ i.e. لَا بَأْسَ عَلَيْكَ There is no harm upon you. / No problem.

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and point out the rule which applies.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| i. لا خير في مال البخيل لنفسه | v. لا بكر في الفصل ولا حسن |
| ii. لا طالب علم في الفصل | vi. لا في الفصل معلم ولا طالب |
| iii. لا صاحب جود مذموم | vii. لا دار كتب في المدينة |
| iv. لا الرجل كريم ولا ابنه | viii. لا في الحديقة صبيان ولا بنات |

Section 3.8

الْمَنْصُوبَاتُ – Words which are always *mansoob*⁴²

- | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ | } known as الْمَفَاعِيلُ الْخَمْسَةُ | 7. التَّمْيِيزُ / التَّمْيِيزُ |
| 2. مَفْعُولٌ مُطْلَقٌ | | 8. اِسْمٌ اِنَّ وَاخْوَاتِهَا |
| 3. مَفْعُولٌ لَهٗ | | 9. حَبْرٌ مَا وَلَا الْمُشَبَّهَتَيْنِ بِلَيْسَ |
| 4. مَفْعُولٌ مَعَهُ | | 10. اِسْمٌ لَا اَلَّتِي لِنَفْيِ الْجِنْسِ |
| 5. مَفْعُولٌ فِيهِ | | 11. حَبْرٌ كَانَ وَاخْوَاتِهَا |
| 6. اَلْحَالُ | | 12. اَلْمُسْتَثْنَى |

Of these, 8, 9, 10 and 11 have been discussed before. Here, we will discuss the remaining.

Section 3.8.1

مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ – Object

Definition: It is that word on which the action of the فَاعِلٌ takes place.

e.g. مَاءً خَالِدٌ شَرَبَ Khalid drank water.
 مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ فَاعِلٌ فِعْلٌ

- Sometimes, the فِعْلٌ governing the مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ is dropped as in the following:

a. مُنَادَى (the one being called):⁴³

e.g. اِبْنَ زَيْدٍ يَا O son of Zayd!
 (مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ) مُنَادَى حَرْفُ الْبَدَاءِ

It was originally (أَدْعُوْ اِبْنَ زَيْدٍ). The *fi'l* أَدْعُوْ was dropped.

Note:

- The حَرْفُ الْبَدَاءِ (vocative particle) substitutes the omitted فِعْلٌ.

Some of the vocative particles are as follows:

أَ and أَيُّ These are used when the مُنَادَى is near.

أَيَّا and هَيْأ These are used when the مُنَادَى is far.

يَا This is used for both (near and far).

⁴² There are exceptions to the rule. *Mustathnaa*, for example, is not always *mansoob*. It is still mentioned under this category because most of the time, it is *mansoob*.

⁴³ For more details, examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 3, 120-124.

Table 3.7
Rules governing the *i'raab* of the مُنَادَى

If the مُنَادَى is	Then it will be	Example
1. مُضَافٌ	مَنْصُوبٌ	يَا ابْنَ زَيْدٍ O son of Zayd!
2. شَبِيهُ بِالْمُضَافِ ⁴⁴	مَنْصُوبٌ	يَا قَارِئًا كِتَابًا O reader of a book!
3. نَكْرَةٌ غَيْرُ مُعَيَّنَةٍ (Unspecified <i>nakirah</i>)	مَنْصُوبٌ	يَا رَجُلًا! خُذْ بِيَدِي O man! Take my hand. (call of a blind man to any person for assistance)
4. نَكْرَةٌ مُعَيَّنَةٌ (Specified <i>nakirah</i>)	مَرْفُوعٌ	يَا رَجُلُ O man!
5. مَعْرِفَةٌ مُفْرَدَةٌ (Singular <i>ma'rifah</i>)	مَرْفُوعٌ	يَا زَيْدُ O Zayd!
6. مَعْرِفَةٌ بِالِ	مَرْفُوعٌ	يَا رَجُلًا (masculine) or يَا امْرَأَةً (feminine) has to be added between the حَرْفُ النَّدَاءِ and مُنَادَى. يَا رَجُلًا O man! يَا امْرَأَةً O woman!

- تَرْخِيمٌ (abbreviation) is allowed in *munaadaa*.

e.g. يَا مَالِكُ can become يَا مَالُ or يَا مَالِ

يَا مَنْصُورُ can become يَا مَنْصُ

Note: The last letter can be given a *dammah* or it can retain its original *harakah*.

- b. أَهْلًا وَ سَهْلًا: This is said to one's guest for welcoming him/her.

Its original is أَتَيْتَ أَهْلًا وَوَطَيْتَ سَهْلًا, which means "You have come to your own people and have trampled comfortable ground." In other words, "you are welcome." Here two *fi'ls*, أَتَيْتَ and وَطَيْتَ have been dropped.

- c. Sometimes, when warning someone, the مَفْعُولُ بِهِ governing the فِعْلٌ is dropped due to context. Examples include the following:

- اتَّقِ الطَّرِيقَ is used instead of اتَّقِ الطَّرِيقَ الطَّرِيقَ to give the same meaning, which is "Beware of the road!" Here, the *fi'l* اتَّقِ has been dropped.
- إِيَّاكَ وَالْأَسَدَ is used instead of اتَّقِ نَفْسَكَ مِنَ الْأَسَدِ to give the same meaning, which is "Save yourself from the lion."

⁴⁴ This is another term for شَبِيهُ الْمُضَافِ. As mentioned earlier, it is similar to *mudaaf* in meaning.

Section 3.8.2⁴⁵

مَفْعُولٌ مُطْلَقٌ

Definition: It is the مَصْدَرٌ of the فِعْلٌ that governs it and is used for the following:

- تَأْكِيدٌ (emphasis) e.g. ضَرَبْتُهُ ضَرْبًا I beat him severely.
- بَيَانُ النَّوعِ (description of type) e.g. جَلَسْتُ جِلْسَةَ الْفَارِيِّ I sat like a *Qari* would sit.
- بَيَانُ الْعَدَدِ (number of times) e.g. ضَرَبْتُهُ ضَرْبَيْنِ I hit him twice.

Note: Sometimes, the فِعْلٌ governing مَفْعُولٌ مُطْلَقٌ is dropped because of context. For example, حَيَّرَ مَقْدَمٌ. Originally, it was قَدِمْتَ قُدُومًا حَيَّرَ مَقْدَمٌ, which means “You came a good coming.” Here, the *fi* قَدِمْتَ, and قُدُومًا, which is the مَفْعُولٌ مُطْلَقٌ, have been dropped because of context. Only the صِفَةُ of the مَفْعُولٌ مُطْلَقٌ, which is حَيَّرَ مَقْدَمٌ, remains.

Section 3.8.3⁴⁶

مَفْعُولٌ لِأَجْلِهِ / مَفْعُولٌ لَهُ

Definition: It is an اِسْمٌ which explains the reason for the action taking place. Generally, it is a مَصْدَرٌ.

- e.g. ضَرَبْتُهُ تَأْدِيبًا I beat/hit him to teach (him) manners.

Section 3.8.4⁴⁷

مَفْعُولٌ مَعَهُ

Definition: It is an اِسْمٌ which appears after such a وَاوٌ which has the meaning of مَعَ (with). This وَاوٌ is known as اَلْمَعِيَّةُ وَاوٌ.

- e.g. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَالْكِتَابُ Zayd came with the book.
جِئْتُ وَزَيْدًا I came with Zayd.

⁴⁵ For more details, examples, and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 2, 156-160. For additional types of مَفْعُولٌ مُطْلَقٌ, with accompanying examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Thanawiyah*, vol. 1, 127-130.

⁴⁶ For more details, examples, and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 2, 161-164.

⁴⁷ For more details, examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 3, 157-162.

Section 3.8.5

ظَرْفٌ / مَفْعُولٌ فِيهِ

Definition: It is an **إِسْمٌ** which denotes the time (زَمَانٌ) or place (مَكَانٌ) in which an action took place.

e.g. سَافَرْتُ شَهْرًا I travelled for a month.

Both types of ظُرُوفٌ namely, زَمَانٌ and مَكَانٌ, are of two types: مَحْدُودٌ (limited, restricted) and مُبْتَهَمٌ (unlimited, unrestricted).

▪ ظُرُوفُ الزَّمَانِ

i. مَحْدُودٌ (limited, restricted): for example,

يَوْمٌ	day	e.g.	صُئِمْتُ يَوْمًا	I fasted for one day.
لَيْلٌ	night	e.g.	عَمِلْتُ لَيْلًا	I worked for one night.
شَهْرٌ	month	e.g.	صُئِمْتُ شَهْرًا	I fasted for a month.
سَنَةٌ	year	e.g.	سَافَرْتُ سَنَةً	I travelled for a year.

ii. مُبْتَهَمٌ (unlimited, unrestricted): for example,

دَهْرٌ	long period of time	e.g.	صُئِمْتُ دَهْرًا	I fasted for a long time.
حِينَ	some time (could be short or long period of time)	e.g.	دَعَا نُوحٌ قَوْمَهُ حِينَ مِنَ الدَّهْرِ	Nuh (peace be upon him) called his people for some time.

▪ ظُرُوفُ الْمَكَانِ

i. مَحْدُودٌ (limited, restricted):

e.g.	صَلَّيْتُ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ	I prayed in the mosque.
e.g.	جَلَسْتُ فِي الدَّارِ	I sat in the house.

ii. مُبْتَهَمٌ (unlimited, unrestricted):

خَلْفَ	behind	e.g.	جَلَسْتُ خَلْفَهُ	I sat behind him.
أَمَامَ	in front of	e.g.	قُمْتُ أَمَامَهُ	I stood in front of him.

Note: In the case of مَكَانٌ (مَحْدُودٌ), the preposition **فِي** is mentioned in words; while in the case of مَكَانٌ (مُبْتَهَمٌ), it is assumed to exist (مُقَدَّرٌ).

The above-mentioned five *maf'ool*s have been combined in a couplet, which is as follows:

حَمَدْتُ حَمْدًا حَامِدًا وَحَمِيدًا

رِعَايَةً شُكْرَهُ دَهْرًا مَدِيدًا

I praised Haamid a lot, with Hameed,
out of regard for thanking him, for an extended period of time.

Sentence Analysis:

1. مُضَافٌ + مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ = شُكْرُهُ
مُضَافٌ + مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ = رِعَايَةَ شُكْرِهِ
2. صِفَةٌ = مَدِيدًا
مَوْصُوفٌ = دَهْرًا

	<u>دَهْرًا مَدِيدًا</u>	<u>رِعَايَةَ شُكْرِهِ</u>	<u>وَحَمِيدًا</u>	<u>حَامِدًا</u>	<u>حَمْدًا</u>	<u>حَمَدْتُ</u>
	⏟	⏟	⏟			
	جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ خَبَرِيَّةٌ	مَفْعُولٌ فِيهِ =	مَفْعُولٌ لَهُ	مَفْعُولٌ مَعَهُ	مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ	مَفْعُولٌ مُطْلَقٌ (فِعْلٌ + فَاعِلٌ)

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and identify the type of مَفْعُولٌ in the following sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. أكل عليّ أكلتين ii. ركب إبراهيم الحصان iii. سافرت وأخاك iv. يثب النمر وثوب الأسد v. يسافر خالد إلى مصر طلبا للعلم vi. لا تبخلوا خشية الفقر vii. توقد المصابيح ليلا | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> viii. سافر زيد طلبا للرزق ix. وقف الشرطي وقوف النشاط x. قرأت الدرس صباحا أمام المعلم xi. تدور الأرض دورة في اليوم xii. اعملوا الخير حبا في الخير xiii. جلست الهرة تحت المكتب xiv. سارت السيارة ساعة |
|---|---|

Section 3.8.6⁴⁸

حَال – State / Condition

Definition: It is an **إِسْمٌ** which describes the condition of either the **فَاعِلٌ** or the **مَفْعُولٌ** or both at the time the action contained in the **فِعْلٌ** takes place.

e.g. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ رَاكِبًا	Zayd came while mounted/riding.
جِئْتُ زَيْدًا نَائِمًا	I came to Zayd while he was sleeping.
كَلَّمْتُ زَيْدًا جَالِسَيْنِ	I spoke to Zayd while both of us were sitting.

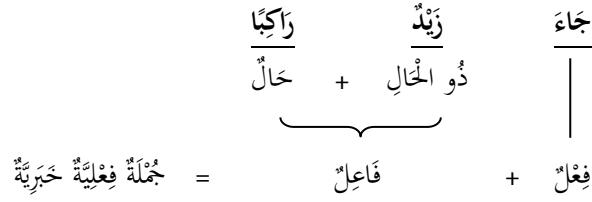
Notes:

1. The condition itself is known as **حَالٌ**, whereas the one whose condition is being described is known as **دُوَ الْحَالِ**.
2. The **حَالٌ** gets a **نَصْبٌ**, which is generally in the form of two *fathahs*.
3. The **دُوَ الْحَالِ** is generally **مَعْرِفَةٌ** and the **حَالٌ** is generally **نَكِيرَةٌ**.
e.g. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ رَاكِبًا Zayd came riding/while he was mounted.
4. If the **دُوَ الْحَالِ** is **نَكِيرَةٌ**, the **حَالٌ** is brought before the **دُوَ الْحَالِ**.
e.g. جَاءَ بِنِي رَاكِبًا رَجُلًا A man came to me riding/while he was mounted.
5. The **دُوَ الْحَالِ** can be a **ضَمِيرٌ**.
e.g. زَيْدٌ أَكَلَ جَالِسًا Zayd ate sitting.
Here, the **دُوَ الْحَالِ** is **هُوَ**, which is the hidden **ضَمِيرٌ** in **أَكَلَ**.
6. The **حَالٌ** can be a sentence.
 - If the **حَالٌ** is a **جُمْلَةٌ إِسْمِيَّةٌ**, then a **وَإَوْ** (with or without a **ضَمِيرٌ**) is added to give the meaning of **حَالٌ**.
e.g. لَا تَقْرَبُوا الصَّلَاةَ وَأَنْتُمْ سُكَرَى Don't come near *salah* while you are intoxicated.
 - If the **حَالٌ** is a **جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ** and the **فِعْلٌ** is **الْمَاضِي الْمَاضِي** **قَدْ** has to appear before the **الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي**.
e.g. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَقَدْ خَرَجَ خَادِمُهُ Zayd came while his servant had left.

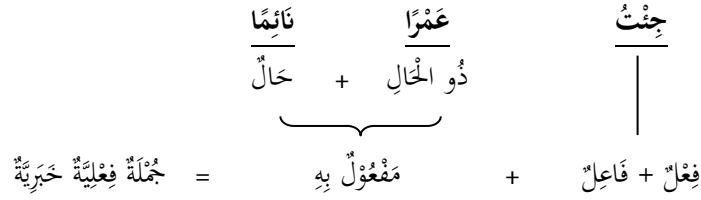
⁴⁸ For more details, examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 3, 101-109.

Sentence Analysis:

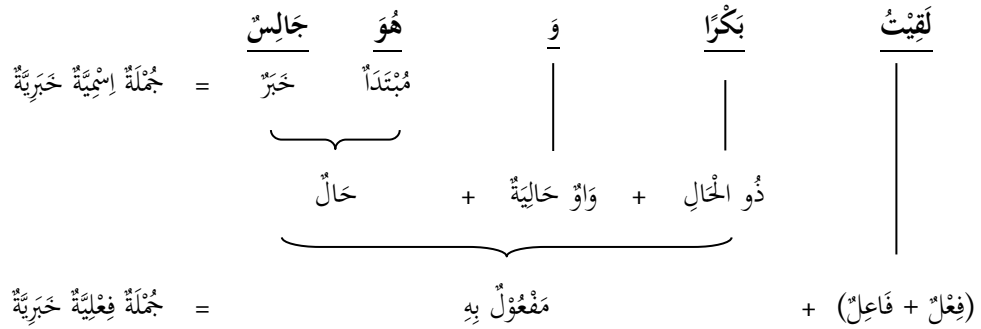
1. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ رَاكِبًا Zayd came riding/while he was mounted.



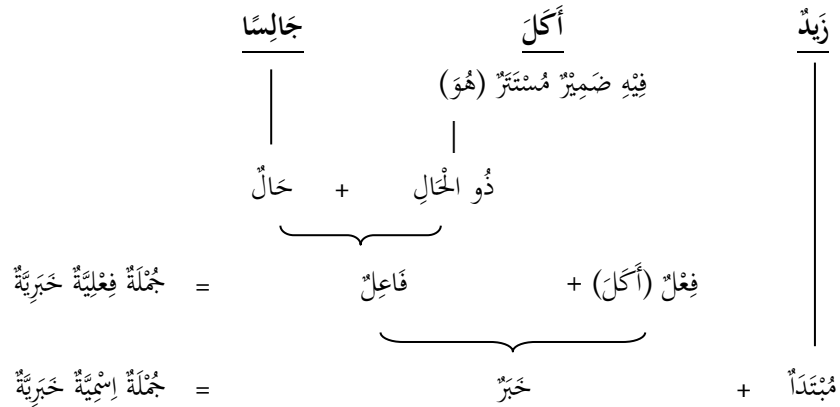
2. جِئْتُ عَمْرًا نَائِمًا I came to 'Amr while he was asleep.



3. لَقَيْتُ بَكْرًا وَهُوَ جَالِسٌ I met Bakr while he was sitting.



4. زَيْدٌ أَكَلَ جَالِسًا Zayd ate while sitting.



EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and point out the *حَالُ* and *دُو الحَالِ* in the following sentences.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| i. أحب التلميذ مجتهدا | vi. لا تأكلوا الطعام حارا |
| ii. لقيت زيدا راكبين | vii. نصرت زيدا مشدودا |
| iii. لا تأكلوا الفاكهة وهي فجة | viii. غاب أخوك وقد حضر جميع أصدقاءه |
| iv. رجع القائد منصورا | ix. دخل اللص المنزل وأهله نائمون |
| v. قطف التاجر العنب ناضجا | x. نمت الأشجار ولما يثمر |

Section 3.8.7⁴⁹

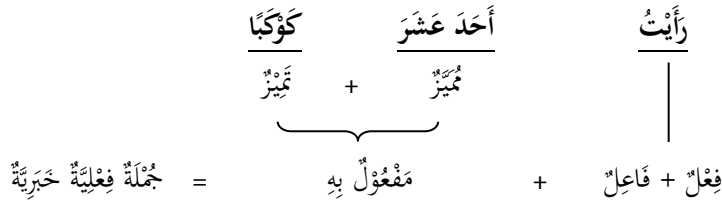
تَمَيُّزٌ / تَمَيُّزٌ

Definition: It is an *إِسْمٌ نَكْرَةٌ* which removes the ambiguity or vagueness created by the preceding *إِسْمٌ*. This ambiguity may be in distance, weight, measure, number, etc.

e.g. رَأَيْتُ أَحَدَ عَشَرَ كَوْكَبًا I saw eleven stars.

Here, the word (كَوْكَبًا) clarifies what (أَحَدَ عَشَرَ) refers to.

Sentence Analysis:



Notes:

- The ambiguous *إِسْمٌ* is called *مُمَيِّزٌ* and the *إِسْمٌ* which clarifies it is called *تَمَيِّزٌ* or *تَمَيُّزٌ*.
- The *تَمَيِّزٌ* is *mansoob* and gets two *fathahs*.
- Sometimes, the *مُمَيِّزٌ* is not mentioned in words but is understood from the meaning of the sentence (مَلْحُوظٌ).

e.g. حَسُنَ الْوَلَدُ كَلَامًا The boy is good in terms of (his) speech.

- If the *مُمَيِّزٌ* is a number, the rules with regards to the usage of numerals (on the next page) must be kept in mind.

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and point out the *مُمَيِّزٌ* and *تَمَيِّزٌ* in the following sentences.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| i. في الحقل عشرون بقرة | v. طاب المكان هواء |
| ii. بعته ذراعا حريرا | vi. لا أملك شبرا أرضا |
| iii. الفيل أكبر من الجمل جسما | vii. شربت رطلا لبنا |
| iv. أطعمت الدجاجة ملء الكف حبا | viii. شربت كوبا ماء |

⁴⁹ For more details, examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 3, 110-119.

Rules for أَسْمَاءُ الْعَدَدِ (numerals)

Before we proceed, it should be pointed out that

عَدَدٌ (number) is the مُمَيَّرٌ and مَعْدُودٌ (the counted *ism*) is the تَمَيَّرٌ.

One and two (1-2)

- The مَعْدُودٌ appears first and the عَدَدٌ appears second.
- The عَدَدٌ and the مَعْدُودٌ must correspond in all aspects.

e.g. وَلَدٌ وَاحِدٌ one boy

بِنْتٌ وَاحِدَةٌ one girl

Note: Normally, for one or two boys, girls, men etc., one simply says وَلَدٌ or وَلَدَانِ, etc.

However, at times, the number is used for emphasis.

Three through ten (3-10)

- From three onwards, the عَدَدٌ appears first and the مَعْدُودٌ second.
- The مَعْدُودٌ is جَمْعٌ بَجْرُورٍ.
- The عَدَدٌ and the مَعْدُودٌ must be of opposite gender.

e.g. ثَلَاثَةٌ أَقْلَامٍ three pens

خَمْسُ سَيَّارَاتٍ five cars

Note: In choosing the correct عَدَدٌ gender, the singular form of the مَعْدُودٌ is taken into account.

e.g. سَبْعَ لَيَالٍ وَثَمَانِيَةَ أَيَّامٍ seven nights and eight days

Here, the singular لَيْلَةٌ (night) of لَيَالٍ is feminine, and يَوْمٌ (day) of أَيَّامٍ is masculine.

- For ten, the masculine form is عَشْرٌ, and the feminine form is عَشْرَةٌ.

Eleven and twelve (11-12)

- From eleven onwards till 99, the مَعْدُودٌ is وَاحِدٌ مَنْصُوبٌ.
- The عَدَدٌ and the مَعْدُودٌ must have the same gender.

e.g. أَحَدَ عَشَرَ كَوْكَبًا eleven stars

إِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ بِنَاتًا twelve girls

- From 11–19, the ش of عشرة/عشر gets a *fathah* when used with a masculine and a *sukoon* when used with a feminine.⁵⁰

⁵⁰ For feminine, the form عَشْرَةٌ is also used. See W. Wright, *Arabic Grammar*, (Mineola, NY: Dover Publications, 2005), Part 1, 256. Also see *Sharh ibn 'Aqil*, vol. 4, 71.

Thirteen through nineteen (13-19)

- The مَعْدُودٌ is وَاحِدٌ مَنصُوبٌ.
- The gender of the first part of the عَدَدٌ should be opposite of the gender of the مَعْدُودٌ.
e.g. أَرْبَعَةٌ عَشَرَ رَجُلًا fourteen men
تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ بِنْتًا nineteen girls
- The “ten” عشر (masc.)/عشرة (fem.) agrees with the مَعْدُودٌ in terms of gender.

Twenty till ninety (20, 30, 40,...,90)

- The مَعْدُودٌ is وَاحِدٌ مَنصُوبٌ.
- The gender of عِشْرُونَ to تِسْعُونَ (20,30,40,...90) remains the same irrespective of whether the مَعْدُودٌ is masculine or feminine.
e.g. عِشْرُونَ رَجُلًا twenty men
ثَلَاثُونَ بِنْتًا thirty girls

Twenty-one and twenty-two (21-22)

- The مَعْدُودٌ is وَاحِدٌ مَنصُوبٌ.
- The first part of the عَدَدٌ and the مَعْدُودٌ must have the same gender.
e.g. وَاحِدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ رَجُلًا twenty-one men
إِخْدَى وَعِشْرُونَ بِنْتًا twenty-one girls
- The same will apply to 31-32, 41-42...91-92.

Twenty-three through twenty-nine (23-29)

- The مَعْدُودٌ is وَاحِدٌ مَنصُوبٌ.
- The gender of the first part of the عَدَدٌ should be opposite of the gender of the مَعْدُودٌ.
e.g. أَرْبَعَةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ رَجُلًا twenty-four men
سِتٌّ وَعِشْرُونَ بِنْتًا twenty-six girls
- The same applies to 33-39, 43-49...93-99.
- The “tens” remain the same, irrespective of whether the مَعْدُودٌ is masculine or feminine.

Hundred (100)

- The مَعْدُودُ is وَاحِدٌ مَجْرُورٌ.
- مِائَةٌ remains the same irrespective of whether the مَعْدُودُ is masculine or feminine.
e.g. مِائَةٌ رِجَالٍ hundred men مِائَةٌ بَنَاتٍ hundred girls
- For 200, مِائَتَانِ is used. (حَالَةُ النَّصْبِ وَ الْجَرِّ مِائَتِي)
e.g. مِائَتَانِ بَنَاتٍ two hundred girls
مِائَتَانِ بَنَاتٍ two hundred girls
- Since مِائَةٌ is feminine, the number **before** مِائَةٌ is masculine.
e.g. أَرْبَعُمِائَةٍ رِجَالٍ four hundred men
أَرْبَعُمِائَةٍ بَنَاتٍ four hundred women
- If there are units and tens with the 100's as well, their respective gender rules apply.
e.g. مِائَةٌ وَعَشْرَةٌ كُتُبٍ hundred and ten books
مِائَةٌ وَخَمْسٌ وَأَرْبَعُونَ كُرَاسَةً hundred and forty-five note-books

Thousand (1,000)

- The مَعْدُودُ is وَاحِدٌ مَجْرُورٌ.
- أَلْفٌ remains the same, irrespective of whether the مَعْدُودُ is masculine or feminine.
e.g. أَلْفٌ رِجَالٍ thousand men أَلْفٌ بَنَاتٍ thousand girls
- Since أَلْفٌ is masculine, the number **before** أَلْفٌ is feminine.
e.g. أَرْبَعَةُ أَلْفٍ رِجَالٍ four thousand men
أَرْبَعَةُ أَلْفٍ بَنَاتٍ four thousand women

Note: The plural for أَلْفٌ is أَلْفٌ.

Million (1,000,000)

- The مَعْدُودُ is وَاحِدٌ مَجْرُورٌ.
- مِلْيُونٌ remains the same irrespective of whether the مَعْدُودُ is masculine or feminine.
e.g. مِلْيُونٌ رِجَالٍ million men
مِلْيُونٌ بَنَاتٍ million girls
- Since مِلْيُونٌ is masculine, the number **before** مِلْيُونٌ is feminine.
e.g. أَرْبَعَةُ مِلْيُونٍ رِجَالٍ four million men
أَرْبَعَةُ مِلْيُونٍ امْرَأَةٍ four million women

Note: The plural for مِلْيُونٌ is مِلْيُونٌ.

EXERCISES

1. Write the following in Arabic.

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| i. 2 schools | vii. 11 books |
| ii. 12 women | viii. 14 chairs |
| iii. 17 doors | ix. 26 boys |
| iv. 21 cars | x. 111 elephants |
| v. 150 houses | xi. 195 keys |
| vi. 444 miles | xii. 3,333 roses |

2. Translate the following sentences and fill in the *i'raab*.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| i. في البستان تسع وتسعون نخلة | v. في الكتاب أربع وعشرون صفحة |
| ii. مساحة الدار ألفا ذراع | vi. في السنة اثنا عشر شهرا |
| iii. للحجرة ثلاثة شبابيك | vii. عمر أخيك الآن خمس وثلاثون سنة |
| iv. باع التاجر أربعة عشر قنطارا قطنا | viii. باضت الدجاجة ثلاث بيضات |

Section 3.8.8⁵¹

مُسْتَنْثَى

إِسْتِثْنَاءٌ means to exclude.

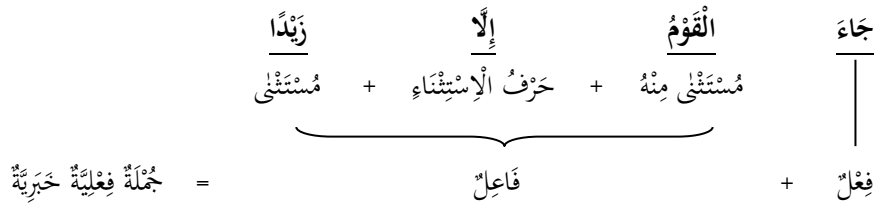
حَرْفُ الْإِسْتِثْنَاءِ is an إِسْمٌ which has been excluded and appears after the مُسْتَنْثَى.

حَرْفُ الْإِسْتِثْنَاءِ مِنْهُ is an إِسْمٌ from which the مُسْتَنْثَى has been excluded. It appears before حَرْفُ الْإِسْتِثْنَاءِ.

حُرُوفُ الْإِسْتِثْنَاءِ are as follows:

إِلَّا عَيْرٌ سِوَى حَاشَا حَالَا عَدَا مَا حَالَا مَا عَدَا

e.g. جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا The people came except Zayd.



Related terminology

مُسْتَنْثَى مُتَّصِلٌ refers to the case when the مُسْتَنْثَى was included in the مُسْتَنْثَى مِنْهُ before the إِسْتِثْنَاءٌ.

e.g. جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا The people came except Zayd.
(Zayd was one of the people before the exclusion.)

مُسْتَنْثَى مُنْقَطِعٌ refers to the case when the مُسْتَنْثَى was not included in the مُسْتَنْثَى مِنْهُ before the إِسْتِثْنَاءٌ.

e.g. سَجَدَ الْمَلَائِكَةُ إِلَّا إِبْلِيسَ The angels prostrated except Iblees.
(Iblees was never one of the angels.)

جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا حِمَارًا The people came except a donkey.
(Donkey was never included among the people.)

كَلَامٌ مُثَبَّتٌ / كَلَامٌ مُوجِبٌ (positive statement) refers to a sentence which does not have a هَيَّيْ, نَفْيٌ or إِسْتِفْهَامٌ.

e.g. جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا The people came except Zayd.

كَلَامٌ مَنْفِيٌّ / كَلَامٌ عَيْرٌ مُوجِبٌ (negative sentence) refers to a sentence which does have a هَيَّيْ, نَفْيٌ or إِسْتِفْهَامٌ.

e.g. مَا جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا The people did not come except Zayd.

⁵¹ For more details, examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 3, 88-100.

مُسْتَنْثَى مُفْرَعٌ refers to a sentence in which the مُسْتَنْثَى مِنْهُ is not mentioned.
e.g. مَا جَاءَ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ No one came except Zayd.

مُسْتَنْثَى عَيْرٌ مُفْرَعٌ refers to a sentence in which the مُسْتَنْثَى مِنْهُ is mentioned.
e.g. جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا The people came except Zayd.

The *i'raab* of the various types of مُسْتَنْثَى are given below:

Table 3.8
إِعْرَابُ الْمُسْتَنْثَى

حُرُوفُ الْإِسْتِثْنَاءِ	Sentence Type		إِعْرَابُ الْمُسْتَنْثَى	Example	
1. إِلَّا	مُنْقَطِعٌ		مَنْصُوبٌ	سَجَدَ الْمَلَائِكَةُ إِلَّا إِبْلِيسَ The angels prostrated except Iblees.	
2. إِلَّا	مُتَّصِلٌ	مُوجِبٌ	مَنْصُوبٌ	جَاءَنِي الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا The people came to me except zayd.	
3. إِلَّا	مُتَّصِلٌ	عَيْرٌ مُوجِبٌ	عَيْرٌ مُفْرَعٌ مَنْصُوبٌ – or – same as مُسْتَنْثَى مِنْهُ	مَا جَاءَنِي أَحَدٌ إِلَّا زَيْدًا مَا جَاءَنِي أَحَدٌ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ No one came to me except Zayd.	
4. إِلَّا	مُتَّصِلٌ	عَيْرٌ مُوجِبٌ	مُفْرَعٌ	according to the عَامِلٌ governing إِلَّا (as if مُسْتَنْثَى مِنْهُ does not exist)	مَا جَاءَ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ No one came except Zayd. مَا رَأَيْتُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا I did not see anyone except Zayd. مَا مَرَرْتُ إِلَّا بِزَيْدٍ I did not pass by anyone except Zayd.
5. مَا خَلَا – مَا عَدَا	All types		مَنْصُوبٌ	جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ مَا خَلَا زَيْدًا جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ مَا عَدَا زَيْدًا The people came except Zayd.	

Section 3.9⁵²

الْمَجْرُورَاتُ – Words which are always *majroor*

There are two types of words that are always *majroor*. These are as follows:

1. An اِسْمٌ preceded by a حَرْفٌ جَرٌّ.

e.g. فِي الْكِتَابِ in the book

2. مُضَافٌ اِلَيْهِ.

e.g. كِتَابُ زَيْدٍ book of Zayd

⁵² For more examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 1, 76-81.

Section 3.10

التَّوَابِعُ

Definition: A تابع is an اسمٌ which follows the اسمٌ before it in terms of *i'raab* (and some other things which vary from تابع to تابع). The preceding اسمٌ is called the متَّبوعٌ.

- The تابعٌ which governs the متَّبوعٌ also governs the تابعٌ.
- There are five تَوَابِعُ:

- 1) النَّعْتُ/الصِّفَةُ
- 2) التَّأْكِيدُ/التَّنْكِيدُ
- 3) الْبَدَلُ
- 4) الْعَطْفُ بِحَرْفٍ/عَطْفُ النَّسَقِ
- 5) عَطْفُ الْبَيَانِ

Section 3.10.1⁵³

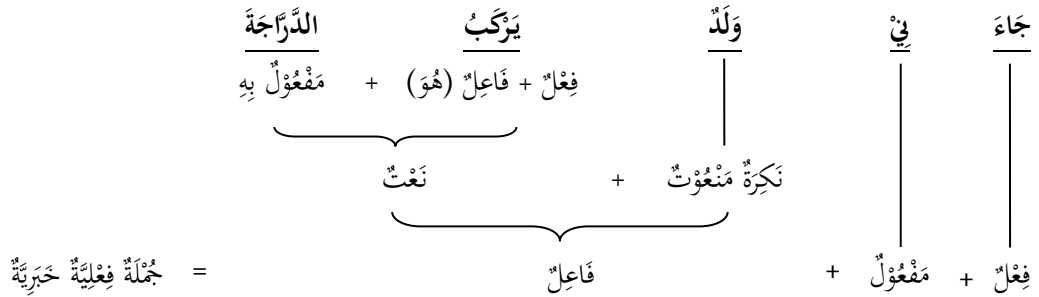
التَّعْتُ أَوْ الصِّفَةُ – Adjective⁵⁴

التَّعْتُ/الصِّفَةُ is of two types: 1) نَعْتُ حَقِيقِيٌّ 2) نَعْتُ سَبِيٍّ

1. نَعْتُ حَقِيقِيٌّ: It is a word which describes the actual متَّبوعٌ.

- As mentioned in section 1.4.3, the نَعْتُ follows the مَنَعُوتٌ, which is the متَّبوعٌ in this case, in the following:
 - a. *I'raab*
 - b. Gender
 - c. Being *ma'rifah* or *nakirah*
 - d. Being singular, dual or plural
- The نَعْتُ can be a complete sentence, in which case the مَنَعُوتٌ must be نَكْرَةٌ.
- The نَعْتُ which is a sentence must have a ضَمِيرٌ which refers to the مَنَعُوتٌ نَكْرَةٌ.

e.g. جَاءَ بِيْ وَوَلَدٌ يَرْكَبُ الدَّرَاجَةَ A boy who was riding the bicycle came to me.



⁵³ For more details, examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 3, 134-142.

⁵⁴ مَوْصُوفٌ is another name for صِفَةٌ; and مَنَعُوتٌ is another name for نَعْتُ.

Note:

- If a مَعْرِفَةٌ is followed by a sentence, it will be a حَبْرٌ or حَالٌ.

Example 1 أَلْوَلَدُ يَرْكَبُ الدَّرَاجَةَ The boy is riding the bicycle.

Here, (أَلْوَلَدُ) is مُبْتَدَأٌ, and (يَرْكَبُ الدَّرَاجَةَ) is the حَبْرٌ.

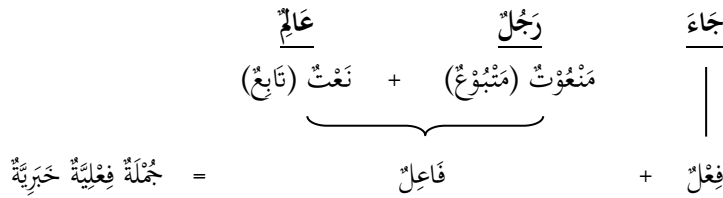
Example 2 جَاءَ بِنِي أَلْوَلَدُ يَرْكَبُ الدَّرَاجَةَ

The boy came to me while riding the bicycle.

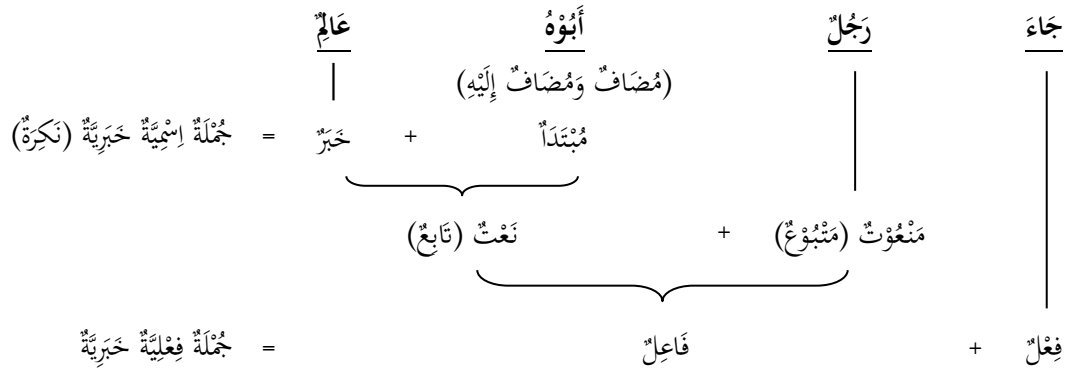
Here, (أَلْوَلَدُ) is الحَالِ دُو, and (يَرْكَبُ الدَّرَاجَةَ) is the حَالٌ.

Sentence Analysis

1. جَاءَ رَجُلٌ عَالِمٌ A learned man came.



2. جَاءَ رَجُلٌ أَبُوهُ عَالِمٌ A man whose father is learned, came.



2. نَعْتٌ سَبْبِيَّةٌ: It is a word which does not describe the مَنْبُوعٌ, but describes that which is connected to the مَنْبُوعٌ.

e.g. جَاءَ بِنِي وَوَلَدٌ عَالِمٌ أَبُوهُ A boy whose father is learned, came to me.

Here, عَالِمٌ is describing أَبُوهُ, which is connected to the مَنْبُوعٌ (وَلَدٌ). In other words, it is describing the مَنْبُوعٌ indirectly.

Notes:

1. In نَعْتٌ سَبْبِيَّةٌ, the مَنْبُوعٌ and نَعْتٌ must correspond in only two aspects:
 - a. I'raab
 - b. Being ma'rifah or nakirah

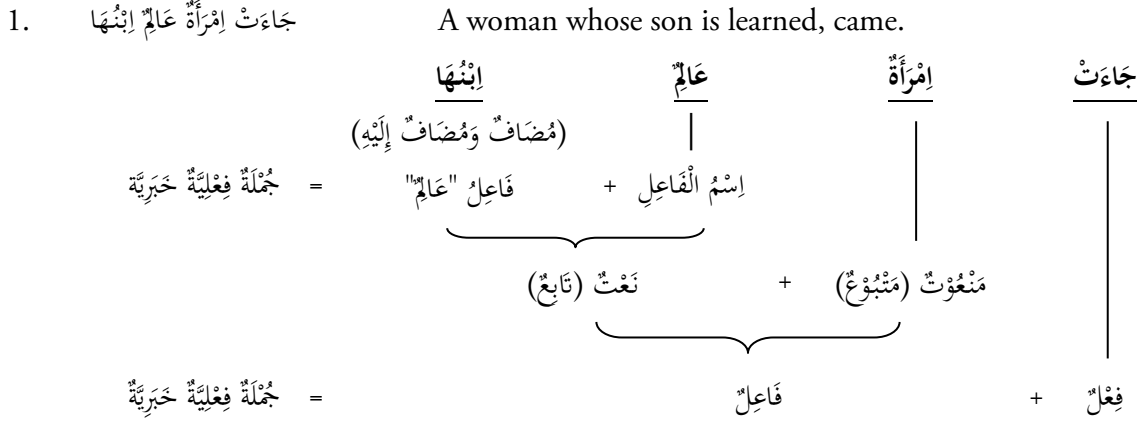
2. The نَعْتٌ will always be singular, irrespective of whether the مَنَعُوتٌ is singular, dual or plural.

e.g. هَاتَانِ صُورَتَانِ جَمِيلَتَانِ إِطَارَاهُمَا These are two pictures whose frames are beautiful.

3. The نَعْتٌ will correspond in gender to the word after it.

e.g. جَاءَتِ السَّيِّدَةُ الْعَاقِلُ وَلَدُهَا The lady, whose son is intelligent, came.

Sentence Analysis:



Note: In this example, عَالِمٌ is the نَعْتٌ سَبَبِيٌّ of امْرَأَةٌ. Because of امْرَأَةٌ, it is *marfoo'* and نَكْرَةٌ. However, it follows ابْنُهَا, or more precisely ابْنُ, in being masculine.⁵⁵

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and point out the نَعْتٌ حَقِيقِيٌّ and the نَعْتٌ سَبَبِيٌّ in the following sentences.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| i. ركبت الحصان الجميل سرجه | v. أوقدت مصباحا نوره قوي |
| ii. هو رجل عالمة ابنته | vi. هذا عمل ينفع |
| iii. هؤلاء بنات عاقلات | vii. هذا منزل ضيق |
| iv. شاهدنا قطارا سيره سريع | viii. جاء الرجل المهذب أخوه |

⁵⁵ There seems to be a contradiction between the sentence analysis and the note given above for نَعْتٌ سَبَبِيٌّ. All the books of *Nahw* that I referred to, including *Ilm al-Nahw*, *al-Nahw al-Wadih*, and *Sharh ibn 'Aqil*, agree that in this example, only عَالِمٌ is the نَعْتٌ سَبَبِيٌّ. Yet, in *Ilm al-Nahw*, the author, Mawlana Charthawali, after explaining the rules for نَعْتٌ سَبَبِيٌّ, has given this example of sentence analysis, in which he makes عَالِمٌ ابْنُهَا the نَعْتٌ of امْرَأَةٌ. This suggests that there can be two ways of looking at this.

2. Analyze the following sentences and point out the difference between them.

i. هذا الولد ضاحك

iii. جاء الولد ضاحكا

ii. هذا ولد ضاحك

Section 3.10.2⁵⁶

التَّوَكُّيدُ / التَّأْكِيدُ – Emphasis

Definition: It is a تابع which emphasizes the متبوع in the matter related to it or emphasizes the inclusion of all members of the متبوع in the matter related to it.

e.g. جَاءَ يَزِيدُ زَيْدٌ (The second ‘Zayd’ emphasized Zayd’s coming.)
جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ كُلُّهُمْ (كُلُّهُمْ emphasized that all came, no one remained.)

- The تابع is called تَأْكِيدٌ and the متبوع is called مُؤَكَّدٌ.

There are two types of تَأْكِيدٌ: لَفْظِيٌّ and مَعْنَوِيٌّ

1. التَّوَكُّيدُ اللَّفْظِيٌّ – Verbal emphasis: The emphasis is attained by repeating the مُؤَكَّدٌ which may be اسمٌ, فعلٌ, حرفٌ, ضميرٌ, or sentence.

e.g. جَاءَ يَزِيدُ زَيْدٌ Zayd definitely came.
حَضَرَ حَضَرَ الْعَائِبُ The absent one definitely became present.
لَا لَا أَخُونُ الْعَهْدَ I will definitely not break the pledge.
إِفْتَحِ أَنْتِ النَّافِذَةَ You open the window.
أَنْتِ الْمَلُومُ أَنْتِ الْمَلُومُ You are, indeed, the censured one.

2. التَّوَكُّيدُ الْمَعْنَوِيٌّ – Emphasis through meaning: The emphasis is attained with any of the following words:

أَبْتَعُ أَنْصَعُ أَكْتَعُ أَجْمَعُ كُلُّ كِلْنَا كِلَا عَيْنٌ نَفْسٌ

Below, we discuss each of these.

- a. عَيْنٌ، نَفْسٌ (himself, herself, itself)
 - These are used for singular, dual and plural.
 - They have to be مضافٌ to a ضميرٌ.
 - Their ضميرٌ must agree with the مُؤَكَّدٌ in terms of gender and singularity (or duality/plurality), while the صيغةٌ should agree with the مُؤَكَّدٌ in terms of singularity (or duality/plurality). The exception is that the plural صيغةٌ of نَفْسٌ and عَيْنٌ is used in place of the dual صيغةٌ.

e.g. قَامَ يَزِيدٌ نَفْسَهُ/عَيْنَهُ Zayd himself stood.
قَامَ الرَّيْدَانِ أَنْفُسُهُمَا/أَعْيُنُهُمَا The two Zayds themselves stood.
قَامَ الرَّيْدُونَ أَنْفُسَهُمْ/أَعْيُنَهُمْ The (many) Zayds themselves stood.

⁵⁶ For more details, examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 3, 143-152

جاءتِ المُعَلِّمَةُ عَيْنُهَا/نَفْسُهَا	The female teacher herself came.
جاءتِ المُعَلِّمَتَانِ أَعْيُنُهُمَا/أَنْفُسُهُمَا	The two female teachers themselves came.
جاءتِ المُعَلِّمَاتُ أَعْيُنُهُنَّ/أَنْفُسُهُنَّ	The (many) female teachers themselves came.

b. كِلْتَا، كِلَا (both)

- These are used for dual only.
- كِلَا is masculine and كِلْتَا is feminine.
- It must be مُضَافٌ to a dual ضَمِيرٌ.

e.g. قَامَ الرَّجُلَانِ كِلَاهُمَا Both of the men stood up.

قَامَتِ المُعَلِّمَتَانِ كِلْتَاهُمَا Both of the female teachers stood up.

c. جَمِيعٌ، أَجْمَعٌ، كُلٌّ (all)

- They are used for singular and plural.
- جَمِيعٌ and كُلٌّ should be مُضَافٌ to a ضَمِيرٌ which must correspond to the مُؤَكَّدٌ.
- أَجْمَعٌ is used with its صِبْغَةٌ changing to correspond to the مُؤَكَّدٌ.

e.g. قَرَأْتُ الكِتَابَ كُلَّهُ I read the whole book.

جاءَ الرِّجَالُ كُلُّهُمُ All the men came.

جاءَ الرِّجَالُ جَمِيعُهُمُ All the men came.

جاءَ النَّاسُ أَجْمَعُونَ All the people came.

Note: جَمِيعٌ and أَجْمَعٌ can only be used for emphasis in those things which have parts or can be divided. Thus, أَكْرَمْتُ زَيْدًا كُلَّهُ (I treated all of Zayd hospitably) would be incorrect.

d. أَتَنَعٌ، أَبْصَعٌ، أَكْتَنَعٌ

- These are used for greater emphasis.
- They appear after أَجْمَعٌ. They are not used without أَجْمَعٌ nor can they appear before أَجْمَعٌ.

e.g. جاءَ القَوْمُ أَجْمَعُونَ أَكْتَنَعُونَ/أَبْصَعُونَ All of the people came.

قَامَتِ النِّسَاءُ جَمْعٌ كَتَنَعٌ/بُتِنَعٌ/بُصَعٌ All of the women stood up.

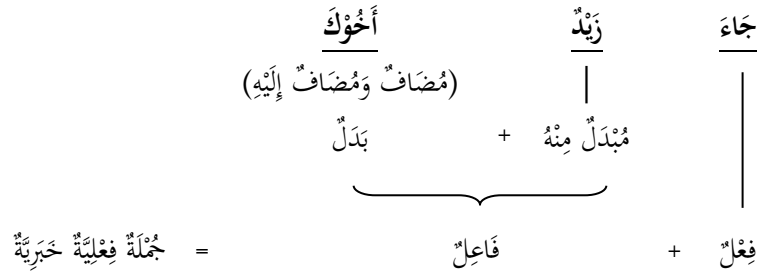
Section 3.10.3⁵⁷

الْبَدَلُ – Substitute

Definition: A **بَدَلٌ** is a **تَابِعٌ** which is actually intended in the sentence and not its **مَتَّبِعٌ**. The **مَتَّبِعٌ** merely serves as an introduction to the **تَابِعٌ**.

- The **تَابِعٌ** is called **بَدَلٌ** (substitute) and the **مَتَّبِعٌ** is called **مُبَدَّلٌ مِنْهُ** or **مُبَدَّلٌ مِنْهُ** (the substituted).

e.g. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ أَخُوكَ Zayd, your brother, came.



There are four types of **بَدَلٌ**:

- 1) **بَدَلٌ كُلٌّ مِنْ كُلٍّ** 2) **بَدَلٌ بَعْضٍ مِنْ كُلٍّ** 3) **بَدَلٌ الْإِسْتِمَالِ** 4) **بَدَلٌ الْعَلْطِ**

- بَدَلٌ كُلٌّ مِنْ كُلٍّ** (also called **بَدَلٌ الْكُلِّ**): It is that **بَدَلٌ**, which refers to the exact same thing as the **مُبَدَّلٌ مِنْهُ**.

e.g. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ أَخُوكَ Zayd, your brother, came.

- بَدَلٌ بَعْضٍ مِنْ كُلٍّ** (also called **بَدَلٌ الْبَعْضِ**): It is that **بَدَلٌ**, which refers to a **part** of the **مُبَدَّلٌ مِنْهُ**.

- The **بَدَلٌ** must have a **ضَمِيرٌ**, which refers to the **مُبَدَّلٌ مِنْهُ**.

e.g. ضَرَبْتُ زَيْدًا رَأْسَهُ I hit Zayd's head.

- بَدَلٌ الْإِسْتِمَالِ**: It is that **بَدَلٌ**, which is related to the **مُبَدَّلٌ مِنْهُ**, but is not part of it.

- The **بَدَلٌ** must have a **ضَمِيرٌ**, which refers to the **مُبَدَّلٌ مِنْهُ**.

e.g. سُرِقَ زَيْدٌ قَمِيصُهُ Zayd's shirt was stolen.

- بَدَلٌ الْعَلْطِ**: It is that **بَدَلٌ**, which is mentioned **after an error**, as a correction.

e.g. اشْتَرَيْتُ فَرَسًا حِمَارًا I bought a horse; no, a donkey.

⁵⁷ For more details, examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 3, 163-167.

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and analyze the following sentences.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| i. قضيت الدين ثلثه | vi. قدم الأمير الوزير |
| ii. سرني الخادم أمانته | vii. عاملت التاجر زيدا |
| iii. ذهب السياح أكثرهم إلى الوادي | viii. تمزق الكتاب غلافه |
| iv. سطع القمر نوره | ix. أغلقت عائشة البستان بابه |
| v. سرتنا الشوارع نظافتها | x. كان أبو حامد الغزالي مجددا |

إِمَّا (either...or):

e.g. التَّمْرُ إِمَّا حُلْوٌ وَإِمَّا مُرٌّ The fruit is either sweet or bitter.

أَوْ (or):

e.g. لَبِثْنَا يَوْمًا أَوْ بَعْضَ يَوْمٍ We stayed for a day or a part of a day.

أَمْ (or): It is generally used with an interrogative (اسْتَفْهَامٌ).

e.g. أَرَيْدُ عِنْدَكَ أَمْ بَكْرٌ؟ Is Zayd with you or Bakr?

لَا (not): This negates from the مَعْطُوفٌ عَلَيْهِ that which has been established for the مَعْطُوفٌ عَلَيْهِ.

e.g. جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ لَا بَكْرٌ Zayd came to me and not Bakr.

بَلْ (but, instead, rather): It is used for إِضْرَابٌ i.e. to give up one notion for another.

- If it appears after a positive sentence (إِيجَابٌ) or a command (أَمْرٌ), it negates the ruling for that which is before it, and affirms it for that which is after it.

e.g. جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ بَلْ بَكْرٌ Zayd came to me. Rather, Bakr (came).

- If it appears after a (نَفْيٌ) or a (نَهْيٌ), it confirms this ruling (of negation) for the one before it, and affirms its opposite (i.e. opposite of negation) for the one after it.

e.g. مَا قَرَأْتُ الْكِتَابَ كُلَّهُ بَلْ بَعْضَهُ I did not read the whole book; rather, [I read] some of it.

لَكِنْ (but, however): It is generally used with a نَفْيٌ and serves the purpose of اسْتِدْرَاكٌ i.e. to rectify.

e.g. مَا جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ لَكِنْ بَكْرٌ جَاءَ Zayd did not come to me but Bakr came.

Notes:

1. If the مَعْطُوفٌ عَلَيْهِ is a مَرْفُوعٌ مُتَّصِلٌ, then its مَضْمِيرٌ مُنْفَصِلٌ has to be mentioned after it.

e.g. ضَرَبْتُ أَنَا وَزَيْدٌ Zayd and I hit.

2. However, if after the مَرْفُوعٌ مُتَّصِلٌ, مَضْمِيرٌ مَرْفُوعٌ appears before the مَعْطُوفٌ, then the مَضْمِيرٌ مُنْفَصِلٌ need not be mentioned.

e.g. ضَرَبْتُ الْيَوْمَ وَزَيْدٌ Zayd and I hit, today.

مَا أَشْرَكْنَا وَلَا آبَاءُنَا Neither us nor our forefathers associated partners.

3. If the مَعْطُوفٌ عَلَيْهِ is a مَضْمِيرٌ preceded by a حَرْفٌ جَرٌّ, then the مَعْطُوفٌ should also be preceded by the same حَرْفٌ جَرٌّ.

e.g. مَرَرْتُ بِكَ وَبَزِيدٍ I passed by you and Zayd.

EXERCISE

1. Fill in a suitable حَرْفٌ عَطْفٍ, translate, fill in the *i'raab* and analyze the following sentences.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| i. أتفاحا أكلت _____ عنبا؟ | iv. باع عقاره _____ منزله |
| ii. قدمت إليه الطعام _____ ما أكله | v. صلى الإمام _____ المأموم |
| iii. ما قابلته _____ قابلت وكيله | vi. أنت فعلت هذا _____ زبير؟ |

CHAPTER 4

الْعَوَامِلُ – Governing words

Definition: An عَامِلٌ is a word that governs/causes *i'raab* changes in another word.

There are two types of عَوَامِلُ: 1) مَعْنَوِيٌّ 2) لَفْظِيٌّ

1. عَامِلٌ مَعْنَوِيٌّ: It is an عَامِلٌ which is not in word form i.e. it is abstract.

There are two types of عَامِلٌ مَعْنَوِيٌّ.

i. الِإِتِّبَاءُ: It means that being free of a لَفْظِيٌّ عَامِلٌ gives a مَبْتَدَأٌ رَفْعٌ.

e.g. زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ Zayd is standing.

Here, زَيْدٌ is the مَبْتَدَأٌ, which is مَرْفُوعٌ because of إِتِّبَاءٌ. قَائِمٌ is the خَبَرٌ and it is also مَرْفُوعٌ because of إِتِّبَاءٌ.

ii. In the case of فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ, being free of a نَصْبٌ حَرْفٌ or جَزْمٌ حَرْفٌ gives فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ رَفْعٌ.

e.g. يَعْمَلُ زَيْدٌ Zayd is working.

Here يَعْمَلُ is مَرْفُوعٌ because it is free of any نَصْبٌ حَرْفٌ or جَزْمٌ حَرْفٌ.

2. عَامِلٌ لَفْظِيٌّ: It is an عَامِلٌ which is in word form.

There are three types of عَامِلٌ لَفْظِيٌّ.

i. الْحُرُوفُ

ii. الْأَفْعَالُ

iii. الْأَسْمَاءُ

Section 4.1

أَلْحُرُوفُ الْعَامِلَةُ – Governing particles

A. Particles that govern *isms*

1. الْحُرُوفُ الْجَارَةُ refer to section 1.7
2. الْحُرُوفُ الْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِالْفِعْلِ refer to section 1.8
3. مَا وَلَا الْمُشَبَّهَاتَانِ بِأَيْسَ refer to section 3.7.3
4. وَأُو الْمَعِيَّةِ refer to section 3.8.4
5. حُرُوفُ الْإِسْتِنَاءِ refer to section 3.8.8
6. حُرُوفُ التِّدَاةِ refer to section 3.8.1
7. لَا الَّتِي لِنَفْيِ الْجِنْسِ refer to section 3.7.4

B. Particles that govern فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ

1. الْحُرُوفُ النَّاصِبَةُ
2. الْحُرُوفُ الْجَازِمَةُ

Section 4.1.1⁵⁸

أَلْحُرُوفُ النَّاصِبَةُ – Particles that cause *nashb*

These are as follows: اَنْ لَنْ كَيْ اِذَنْ

- These appear before فعلٌ مُضَارِعٌ and cause the following changes at the end:
 - They give the last letter a *fathah* if it is not a نُونٌ of تَنْبِيْهُ or جَمْعٌ.
 - If the last letter is a نُونٌ of تَنْبِيْهُ or جَمْعٌ, it is dropped. The exception is the نُونٌ of the two جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ.

Table 4.1
أَلْحُرُوفُ النَّاصِبَةُ

حَرْفُ نَصْبٍ	Meaning	Example
اَنْ	that, to	أُرِيدُ اَنْ اُدْخُلَ الْجَنَّةَ I want to enter Paradise.
لَنْ	will not, never	لَنْ يَدْخُلَ الْكَافِرُ الْجَنَّةَ The disbeliever will never enter Paradise.
كَيْ	so that	جِئْتُ كَيْ اَسْتَرِيْحَ I came so I could rest.
اِذَنْ	then, in that case	اِذَنْ تَفُوْزُ فِي عَمَلِكَ In that case, you will be successful in your work. [This is said in response to the one who may have said: اَجْتَهِدُ (I will work hard).]

Notes:

1. Sometimes اَنْ, together with its فعلٌ, gives the meaning of a مَصْدَرٌ. In this case, اَنْ is called اَلْمَصْدَرِيَّةُ.

e.g. اَنْ تَصُوْمُوْا خَيْرٌ لَّكُمْ i.e. صَوْمُكُمْ خَيْرٌ لَّكُمْ

Your fasting is better for you.

2. اَنْ is hidden after the following six حُرُوفٌ and causes فعلٌ مُضَارِعٌ to be *mansoob*.⁵⁹

a. After حَتَّى:

e.g. (حَتَّى اَنْ اُدْخُلَ) سِرْتُ حَتَّى اُدْخُلَ الْبَلَدَ

I travelled until I entered the city.

⁵⁸ For more examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 1, 47-52.

⁵⁹ For more examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 2, 52-62.

- b. After **لَا مَ الْجُحُودِ** or **لَا مَ النَّفْيِ**: i.e. that **لَا مَ** which appears after **كَانَ الْمَنْفِيَّةُ**.
 e.g. **مَا كَانَ اللَّهُ لِيُعَذِّبَهُمْ (لِأَنَّ يُعَذِّبَهُمْ)**
 Allah was not going to punish them.
- c. After **أَوْ** which has the meaning of **إِلَى أَنْ** (until) or **إِلَّا أَنْ** (but that/unless).
 e.g. **(إِلَى أَنْ تُعْطِيَنِي) لِأَلَزَمْتَكَ أَوْ تُعْطِيَنِي حَقِّي**
 I will not leave you until you give me my right.
(إِلَّا أَنْ يَعْتَذِرَ) يُعَاقَبُ الْمُسِيءُ أَوْ يَعْتَذِرَ
 The sinner will be punished unless he provides an excuse.
- d. After **وَأَوْ الصَّرْفِ**: i.e., a **وَأَوْ** that “turns away” from the word after it the effect which the **عَامِلٌ** had on the word before it (before the **وَأَوْ**).
 e.g. **(وَأَنْ تَكْذِبَ) لَا تَأْمُرْ بِالصِّدْقِ وَتَكْذِبَ**
 Do not command the truth while you lie.
 (Here, the **وَأَوْ** turned away/stopped the effect of **لَا** from **تَكْذِبَ**.)
- This **وَأَوْ** is also known as **وَأَوْ الْمَعِيَّةِ** or **وَأَوْ الْمُصَاحَبَةِ**.
 - The sentence must start with a **نَهْيٌ** or **هَيِّئٌ**.
- e. After **لَا مَ التَّعْلِيلِ**: i.e., a **لَا مَ** that has the meaning of **كَيْ** (it is also called **لَا مَ كَيْ**).
 e.g. **(لِأَنَّ أَسْتَرِيحَ) جِئْتُ لِأَسْتَرِيحَ**
 I came so I could rest.
- f. After **أَلْفَاءُ السَّبَبِيَّةِ/الْجَوَابِيَّةِ**: i.e., a **ف** that comes in the **جَزَاءٌ** to any of the following six.
1. **الْأَمْرُ** e.g. **(فَأَنْ أَكْرِمَكَ) زُرْنِي فَأَكْرِمَكَ**
 Visit me so that I treat you hospitably.
 2. **النَّهْيُ** e.g. **لَا تَطْعَمُوا فِيهِ فَيَجِلَّ عَلَيْكُمْ غَضَبِي**
 Do not cross the limit regarding it, lest My wrath descends upon you.
 3. **النَّفْيُ** e.g. **مَا تَزُورُنَا فَنُكْرِمَكَ**
 You do not visit us, otherwise we would have treated you hospitably.
 4. **الِاسْتِفْهَامُ** e.g. **أَيْنَ بَيْتُكَ فَأَزُورَكَ**
 Where is your house, so I can visit you.

5. اَلتَّمَنِّي e.g. لَيْتَ لِي مَالًا فَأَنْفِقَهُ
I wish I had wealth, so I would have spent it.

6. اَلْعَرْضُ e.g. أَلَا تَنْزِلُ بِنَا فَنُصِيبَ خَيْرًا
Why don't you visit us so that you receive good!

3. اَلْأَنَّ has to be written after a لَامٌ التَّعْلِيلِ if the لَامٌ التَّعْلِيلِ is joined to a نَافِيَةٌ.
e.g. لَيْلًا يَعْلَمَ (لِأَنَّ لَا) So that he does not know.

4. اَلْأَنَّ which appears after a فِعْلًا with the root letters ع - ل - م is not a حَرْفُ نَصْبٍ. Therefore, it does not cause فِعْلًا مُضَارِعًا to be *mansoob*. Such an اَلْأَنَّ is known as اَلْمُحَقِّقَةُ مِنَ الْمُثَقَّلَةِ i.e., that اَلْأَنَّ which was اَلْأَنَّ.

e.g. عَلِمْتُ أَنَّ سَيُفْوِمُ I knew that he will stand up.

e.g. عَلِمَ أَنَّ سَيَكُونُ مِنْكُمْ مَرْضَى He knew that some of you will be sick.

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and point out the حَرْفُ نَصْبٍ and its effect in the following sentences.

- i. يجتهد الطالب لينجح
- ii. لن يفوز الكسلان
- iii. جئت كي أتعلم
- iv. لم يكن الشرطي ليسرق
- v. لا تأكل حتى تجوع
- vi. إن الله يأمركم أن تذبجوا بقرة
- vii. اصنع المعروف فتنال الشكر
- viii. فأراد ربك أن يبلغا أشدهما ويستخرجا كنزهما

Section 4.1.2⁶⁰

أَحْرُوفُ الْجَازِمَةِ – Particles that cause *jazm*

These are as follows:

لَاءُ النَّهْيِ لَامُ الْأَمْرِ لَمَّا لَمْ إِنَّ

- These appear before **فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ** and cause the following changes at the end:
 - They give the last letter a *sukoon* if it is not a نُونٌ of تَنْبِيْةٌ or جَمْعٌ.
 - If the last letter is a نُونٌ of تَنْبِيْةٌ or جَمْعٌ, it will be dropped. The exception is the جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ نُونٌ of the two جَمْعٌ مُؤَنَّثٌ نُونٌ.

Table 4.2

أَحْرُوفُ الْجَازِمَةِ

حَرْفُ جَزْمٍ	Meaning	Example
إِنَّ	if	إِنَّ تَجْلِسَ أَجْلِسَ If you sit, I will sit.
لَمْ	did not	لَمْ يَضْرِبْنِي He did not hit me.
لَمَّا	not yet	ذَهَبَ الْوَلَدُ وَ لَمَّا يَعُدُّ The boy went but has not returned yet.
لِ	should, shall, let	لِيَجْلِسَ He should sit.
لَا	do not	لَا تَجْلِسَ Do not sit.

Notes:

1. إِنَّ appears before two verbal sentences. The first one is called شَرْطٌ (condition) and the second جَزَاءٌ (answer/result).
2. If إِنَّ appears before إِلا, it should be translated negatively.

e.g. إِنَّ هَذَا إِلا مَلَكٌ كَرِيمٌ He is not but an honorable angel.

Note: This negation could also be expressed as “He is only an honorable angel.”
3. لَمْ can also be used to give the meaning of لَمَّا. For this, بَعْدُ or إِلَى الْآنَ is added after the فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ which was given جَزْمٌ by لَمْ.

e.g. لَمْ يَذْهَبْ بَعْدُ He has not gone yet.
4. لِ should be brought before the جَزَاءٌ of a شَرْطٌ when the جَزَاءٌ is one of the following:
 - a. جُمْلَةٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ e.g. إِنَّ تَأْتِنِي فَأَنْتَ مُكْرَمٌ
If you come to me you will be treated hospitably.

⁶⁰ For more examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 1, 52-57 & vol. 2, 63-66.

- b. أمرٌ e.g. إِنَّ رَأَيْتَ زَيْدًا فَأَكْرَمْهُ
If you see Zayd, treat him hospitably.
- c. هَيَّيْ e.g. إِنَّ أَتَاكَ زَيْدٌ فَلَا تُهِنْهُ
If Zayd comes to you, do not humiliate him.
- d. دُعَاءٌ e.g. إِنَّ أَكْرَمْتَنِي فَجَزَاكَ اللَّهُ خَيْرًا
If you treat me hospitably, then, may Allah reward you well.

5. الفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي will be translated in the future tense when it is...

- a. used as a دُعَاءٌ e.g. جَزَاكَ اللَّهُ خَيْرًا
May Allah reward you well.
- b. preceded by حَرْفُ شَرْطٍ e.g. إِنْ جَلَسْتُ جَلَسْتُ
If you sit, I will sit.
- c. preceded by اِسْمٌ مَوْضُوعٌ e.g. مَنْ جَاءَ بِالْحَسَنَةِ فَلَهُ عَشْرُ أَمْثَالِهَا
Whoever comes with good, there will be ten like it for him.

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and point out the حَرْفُ جَزْمٍ and its effect on the following sentences.

- i. ليفتح علي النافذة
- ii. لا تكثر من الضحك
- iii. اختلف الشريكان ولم يتفقا
- iv. كبر الغلام ولما يتهدب
- v. إن يسافر أخوك أسافر معه
- vi. إن تنصروا الله ينصركم

Section 4.2

الأفعال العاملة – Governing *fi* 'l:

Section 4.2.1

الفعل المعروف – Active *fi* 'l: It is a فعل whose doer is known/mentioned.

- فعلٌ معروفٌ, whether transitive or intransitive, governs the following *isms*, as and when applicable:
 - it gives رَفَعٌ to the فاعِلٌ.
 - it gives نَصَبٌ to the following, as and when applicable:
 - i. (الفعل المتعدي) مفعولٌ به (مفعولٌ به) can only be governed by
 - ii. مفعولٌ مطلقٌ
 - iii. مفعولٌ معه
 - iv. مفعولٌ له
 - v. مفعولٌ فيه
 - vi. حالٌ
 - vii. تمييزٌ

Section 4.2.2

الفعل المجهول – Passive *fi* 'l: It is a فعل whose doer is not known/mentioned.

- فعلٌ مجهولٌ is also known as مَما لَمْ يُسَمَّ فاعِلُهُ (a فعلٌ whose فاعِلٌ is not named).
- It gives رَفَعٌ to the نَائِبُ فاعِلٍ (originally the مفعولٌ به).
- It gives نَصَبٌ to all the remaining منصوباتٌ.

e.g. ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ أَمَامَ الْقَاضِي ضَرْبًا شَدِيدًا فِي دَارِهِ تَأْدِيبًا

Zayd was beaten severely on Friday, in front of the Judge, in his office/house, to teach him manners.

Section 4.2.3

الفعل اللازم – Intransitive *fi* 'l: It is a فعل whose meaning can be understood without a مفعولٌ به.

e.g. جَلَسَ زَيْدٌ Zayd sat.

Section 4.2.4

الأفعال الناقصة: These were discussed earlier in section 1.9.

Section 4.2.5⁶¹

أَلْفِعْلُ الْمُتَعَدِّي – Transitive *fi'l*

Definition: It is a فِعْلٌ whose meaning cannot be understood without a مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ.

e.g. ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ بَكْرًا Zayd hit Bakr.

There are four types of أَلْفِعْلُ الْمُتَعَدِّي. These are as follows:

1. Those *fi'ls* which require one مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ as is the case with most *muta'addi* verbs.

e.g. ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ بَكْرًا

2. Those *fi'ls* which **can** be given two مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ. These include the following:

- Any فِعْلٌ which has the meaning of إِعْطَاءٌ (to give).

e.g. أَعْطَى مَنَحَ وَهَبَ etc.

أَعْطَيْتُ السَّائِلَ خُبْرًا I gave the beggar a bread.

- Some other *fi'ls* which can also have two مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ include the following

أَمَرَ كَسَى سَأَلَ etc.

e.g. يَكْسُو الْعِلْمُ أَهْلَهُ وَقَارًا Knowledge clothes its possessor with dignity.

3. Those *fi'ls* which **must** be given two مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ.

- These *fi'ls* are known as أَفْعَالُ الْقُلُوبِ (*fi'ls* which relate to the heart/feelings).
- They enter upon a مُبْتَدَأٌ and خَبْرٌ unlike the *fi'ls* above (number 2).

Table 4.3

أَفْعَالُ الْقُلُوبِ

<i>Fi'l</i>	Usage	Example
رَأَى	used for certainty (يَقِينٌ)	رَأَيْتُ سَعِيدًا ذَاهِبًا I was sure Sa'eed was going.
وَجَدَ	used for certainty (يَقِينٌ)	وَجَدْتُ رَشِيدًا عَالِمًا I was sure Rasheed was knowledgeable.
عَلِمَ	used for certainty (يَقِينٌ)	عَلِمْتُ زَيْدًا أَمِينًا I was sure Zayd was trustworthy.
زَعَمَ	used for certainty (يَقِينٌ) or doubt (شَكٌّ)	زَعَمْتُ زَيْدًا حَاضِرًا I was sure Zayd was present. / I thought Zayd was present.
حَسِبَ	used for doubt (شَكٌّ)	حَسِبْتُ زَيْدًا فَاضِلًا I thought Zayd was well-educated.
خَالَ	used for doubt (شَكٌّ)	خَلْتُ خَالِدًا قَائِمًا I thought Khalid was standing.
ظَنَّ	used for doubt (شَكٌّ)	ظَنَنْتُ بَكْرًا نَائِمًا I thought Bakr was sleeping.

⁶¹ For more details, examples, and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 3, 69-71.

Note: Other *fi'ls* which also require two مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ include the following:

صَيَّرَ to make something something else

e.g. صَيَّرْتُ الْأُورَاقَ كِتَابًا I made the pages a book.

اتَّخَذَ to take someone/something as someone/something

e.g. وَاتَّخَذَ اللَّهُ إِبْرَاهِيمَ خَلِيلًا Allah took Ibraheem (peace be upon him) as a friend.

جَعَلَ to make something something else

e.g. جَعَلْتُ الْكِتَابَ مُرْتَّبًا I made the book organized.

4. Those *fi'ls* which require three مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ. Each of these has the meaning of “informing” or “showing.” These are as follows:

Table 4.4

<i>Fi'l</i>	Example
أَرَى	أَرَيْتُ زَيْدًا خَالِدًا نَائِمًا I informed Zayd that Khalid is sleeping.
أَعْلَمَ	أَعْلَمْتُ زَيْدًا بَكْرًا فَاضِلًا I informed Zayd that Bakr is well-educated.
أَنْبَأَ	أَنْبَأَنِي الرَّسُولُ الْأَمِيرَ قَادِمًا The messenger informed me that the chief is coming.
نَبَأَ	نَبَأْتُهُمُ الْكِبْرَ مُمْقُوتًا I informed them that arrogance is hated.
أَخْبَرَ	أَخْبَرْتُ الْعِلْمَانَ اللَّعِبَ مُفِيدًا I informed the boys that sport is beneficial.
خَبَّرَ	خَبَّرْتُ الْمُسَافِرِينَ الْقِطَارَ مُتَأَخِّرًا I informed the travellers that the train is late.
حَدَّثَ	حَدَّثْتُ الْأَوْلَادَ السِّبَاخَةَ نَافِعَةً I informed the children that swimming is beneficial.

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and analyze the following sentences.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| i. نَبَأْتُ سَعِيدًا أَحَاهُ قَادِمًا | iv. رَأَيْتُ الصَّلْحَ خَيْرًا |
| ii. أَعْطَيْتُ زَيْدًا دَرَاهِمًا | v. أَخْبَرَنِي زَيْدٌ أَبَاهُ مَرِيضًا |
| iii. فَهَمَّ سَعِيدٌ الدَّرْسَ | vi. ظَنَنْتُ الْجَوَّ مَعْتَدِلًا |

Section 4.2.6⁶²

أَفْعَالُ الْمُقَارَبَةِ وَالرَّجَاءِ وَالشُّرُوعِ

Definition: These *fi'ls* are actually a type of أَفْعَالُ نَاقِصَةٌ and they behave the same way. They also enter upon حَبَرَ & مُبْتَدَأً and give رَفْعٌ to their إِسْمٌ and نَصْبٌ to their حَبَرَ. The difference is that their حَبَرَ is always جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ.

They are used for the following purposes:

1. أَفْعَالُ الْمُقَارَبَةِ show nearness in the attainment (حُصُولٌ) of the حَبَرَ.
2. أَفْعَالُ الرَّجَاءِ show desire for attainment of حَبَرَ.
3. أَفْعَالُ الشُّرُوعِ show commencement of action.

Table 4.5
أَفْعَالُ الْمُقَارَبَةِ وَالرَّجَاءِ وَالشُّرُوعِ

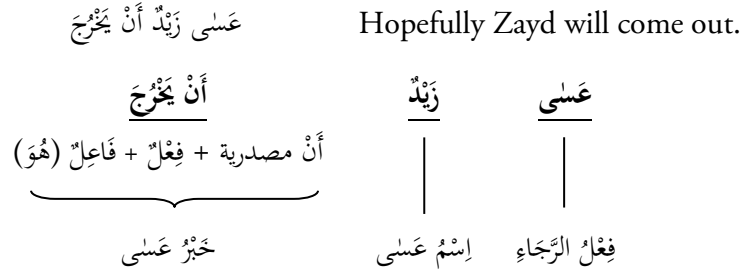
فِعْلٌ	إِسْمٌ	حَبَرَ	Type	Example	
كَادَ	مَرْفُوعٌ	أَنَّ مُضَارِعٌ preferably without	حُصُولٌ	كَادَ زَيْدٌ يَذْهَبُ	Zayd was about to go.
كَرَبَ / كَرَبَ*	مَرْفُوعٌ	أَنَّ مُضَارِعٌ preferably without	حُصُولٌ	كَرَبَ خَالِدٌ يَجْلِسُ	Khalid was about to sit.
أَوْشَكَ	مَرْفُوعٌ	أَنَّ مُضَارِعٌ preferably with	حُصُولٌ	أَوْشَكَ زَيْدٌ أَنْ يَجْلِسَ	Zayd was about to sit.
عَسَى*	مَرْفُوعٌ	أَنَّ مُضَارِعٌ preferably with	رَجَاءٌ	عَسَى زَيْدٌ أَنْ يَخْرُجَ	Hopefully Zayd will come out.
طَفِقَ*	مَرْفُوعٌ	أَنَّ مُضَارِعٌ without	شُرُوعٌ	طَفِقَ زَيْدٌ يَكْتُبُ	Zayd began writing.
جَعَلَ*	مَرْفُوعٌ	أَنَّ مُضَارِعٌ without	شُرُوعٌ	جَعَلَ زَيْدٌ يَقْرَأُ	Zayd began reading.
أَخَذَ*	مَرْفُوعٌ	أَنَّ مُضَارِعٌ without	شُرُوعٌ	أَخَذَ زَيْدٌ يَأْكُلُ	Zayd began eating.

* These *fi'ls* are used only in past tense.

- The أَفْعَالُ الشُّرُوعِ can be used as normal *fi'ls* too.
e.g. أَخَذَ زَيْدٌ ثَوْبَهُ Zayd took his clothes.

⁶² For more details, examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Thanawiyah*, vol. 1, 103-108.

Sentence Analysis:



EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and analyze the following sentences.

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| i. عسى الله أن يشفيك | iv. أوشك أن يفتح باب المدرسة |
| ii. تكاد السموات يتفطرن | v. أخذت أكتب |
| iii. عست المرأة أن تقوم | vi. جعل زيد يمسح رأسه |

Section 4.2.7⁶³

أَفْعَالُ الْمَدْحِ وَالذَّمِّ – Fi'ls of praise and blame

<i>Fi'ls of praise:</i>	نِعْمَ	e.g.	نِعْمَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ	What a wonderful man Zayd is!
	حَبِّدَا	e.g.	حَبِّدَا زَيْدٌ	What a wonderful man Zayd is!
<i>Fi'ls of blame:</i>	بِئْسَ	e.g.	بِئْسَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ	What an evil man Zayd is!
	سَاءَ	e.g.	سَاءَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ	What an evil man Zayd is!

- That which appears after the فَاعِلٌ is called مَخْصُوصٌ بِالْمَدْحِ or مَخْصُوصٌ بِالذَّمِّ.
- The فَاعِلٌ of نِعْمَ – بِئْسَ – سَاءَ must be one of the following:
 - i. prefixed with ال.
e.g. نِعْمَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ What a wonderful man Zayd is!
 - ii. مضافٌ to an اِسْمٌ prefixed with ال.
e.g. نِعْمَ صَاحِبِ الْعِلْمِ زَيْدٌ What a wonderful learned man Zayd is!
 - iii. a hidden ضَمِيرٌ followed by a نَكِرَةٌ مَنْصُوبَةٌ (being تَمَيِّزٌ).
e.g. نِعْمَ رَجُلًا زَيْدٌ [نِعْمَ (هُوَ) رَجُلًا زَيْدٌ] What a wonderful man Zayd is!
 - iv. The word ما.
e.g. بِئْسَ مَا كَانُوا يَفْعَلُونَ How evil is what they used to do!

In حَبِّدَا زَيْدٌ, فِعْلٌ is the فَعْلٌ.
فَاعِلٌ (اِسْمٌ إِشَارَةٌ) is its فَاعِلٌ.
مَخْصُوصٌ بِالْمَدْحِ is the فَعْلٌ.

Notes:

1. These *fi'ls* are used in the past tense in their singular form (masculine or feminine).
2. At times the مَخْصُوصٌ بِالْمَدْحِ is dropped.

e.g. نِعْمَ الْعَبْدُ i.e. نِعْمَ الْعَبْدُ أَيُّوبُ What a wonderful slave Ayyub is!

⁶³ For more details, examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Thanawiyyah*, vol. 1, 57-59.

Sentence Analysis:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{زَيْدٌ} \\ \text{مَخْصُوصٌ بِالْمَدْحِ} \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{الرَّجُلُ} \\ \text{فَاعِلٌ} \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{نِعْمٌ} \\ \text{فِعْلٌ الْمَدْحِ} \end{array}$$

= جُمْلَةٌ إِسْمِيَّةٌ خَبَرِيَّةٌ = مُبْتَدَأٌ مُؤَخَّرٌ خَبَرٌ مُقَدَّمٌ

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and analyze the following sentences.

- i. نعمت الابنة فاطمة
- ii. حبذا الانفاق
- iii. نعم المولى

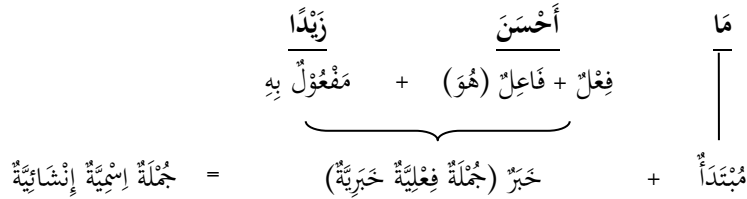
Section 4.2.8⁶⁴

أَفْعَالُ التَّعْجِبِ – Fi'ls of wonder

For three-letter *fi'ls* (الثَّلَاثِي الْمَجْرَدُ), there are two *wazns* for expressing wonder or amazement.

1. أَيُّ شَيْءٍ مَا: *مَا أَفْعَلُهُ* has the meaning of أَيُّ شَيْءٍ.

e.g. مَا أَحْسَنَ زَيْدًا How wonderful Zayd is!



2. (فِعْلٌ أَمْرٌ) أَفْعَلُ: أَفْعَلُ بِهِ (زَائِدَةٌ) has the meaning of past tense and the ب is extra (زَائِدَةٌ).

e.g. (أَحْسَنَ زَيْدًا) How wonderful Zayd is!
 أَحْسَنَ بِزَيْدٍ
 جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ إِنشَائِيَّةٌ

- To express wonder for other than three-letter *fi'ls* (غَيْرِ الثَّلَاثِيِّ الْمَجْرَدِ), a word such as أَشَدُّ بِ / أَشَدَّ مَا or أَحْسَنَ بِ / مَا أَحْسَنَ etc. should be placed before the مَصْدَرٌ of the desired فِعْلٌ. The مَصْدَرٌ will be مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ, thus مَنصُوبٌ.

e.g. مَا أَشَدَّ إِكْرَامَ النَّاسِ لِلْعُلَمَاءِ How very respectful people are towards the learned!

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and analyze the following sentences.

- i. أطول بزيد
- ii. ما أشد بياض شعره
- iii. ما أطول الرجلين

⁶⁴ For more details, examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Thanawiyah*, vol. 1, 60-63.

Section 4.3

الأسماء العاملة – Governing *isms*

Amongst these, أسماء الأفعال were discussed in section 2.4.4. Here, we will discuss the rest.

Section 4.3.1⁶⁵

الأسماء الشرطية – Conditional *isms*

- They govern two فعل مضاف giving both a جزم.
- They appear before two sentences. The first is called شرط (condition) and the second جزاء (result).

Table 4.6
الأسماء الشرطية

<i>Ism</i>	Meaning	Usage		Example
1. مَنْ	who, whoever	لِلْعَاقِلِ	مَنْ يُكْرِمْنِي أُكْرِمُهُ	Whoever treats me hospitably, I will treat him hospitably.
2. مَا	what, whatever	لِعَبْرِ الْعَاقِلِ	مَا تَأْكُلُ أَكُلُ	Whatever you eat, I will eat.
3. مَهْمَا	however much	لِعَبْرِ الْعَاقِلِ	مَهْمَا تُنْفِقُ فِي الْحَيْرِ يَنْفَعَكَ	Whatever you spend in the way of good, will benefit you.
4. مَتَى	when	لِلزَّمانِ	مَتَى تَذْهَبُ أَذْهَبُ	Whenever you go, I will go.
5. أَيَّانَ	when	لِلزَّمانِ	أَيَّانَ تُسَافِرُ أُسَافِرُ	Whenever you travel, I will travel.
6. أَيْنَ	where	لِلْمَكَانِ	أَيْنَ تَذْهَبُ أَذْهَبُ	Wherever you go, I will go.
7. أَيْ	where	لِلْمَكَانِ	أَيْ تَنْزِلُ أَنْزِلُ	Wherever you stay, I will stay.
8. حَيْثُمَا	where	لِلْمَكَانِ	حَيْثُمَا تُسَافِرُ أُسَافِرُ	Wherever you travel, I will travel.
9. كَيْفَمَا	how, manner	لِلْحَالِ	كَيْفَمَا تَقْعُدُ أَقْعُدُ	Whichever way you sit, I will sit.
10. أَيُّ	any of the above	any of the above	أَيُّ مَكَانٍ تَذْهَبُ أَذْهَبُ	Whichever place you go, I will go.

Notes:

1. إِذْمَا and إِنَّ have the same function as الأسماء الشرطية i.e. giving jazm to two فعل مضاف except that they are particles (حرفا الشرط) and not *isms*. Collectively they (*isms* and particles) are all called أدوات الشرط الجازمة.

⁶⁵ For more examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 2, 66-71.

إِنْ	if	e.g.	إِنْ تَذَهَبْ أَذْهَبْ	If you go, I will go.
إِذَا	if	e.g.	إِذَا تَفَعَلَ شَرًّا تَنْدَمَ	If you do evil, you will be regretful.

2. There are other الشَّرْطُ that are عَزِيْرُ جَازِمَةٍ, i.e. they do not give جَزْمٌ to فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ. Some of these are discussed in Section 4.4, # 13 (حُرُوفُ الشَّرْطِ الَّتِي لَا تَجْزِمُ). Amongst the الْأَسْمَاءُ الشَّرْطِيَّةُ, which do not give جَزْمٌ, two are discussed below:

- i. كَلَّمَا (whenever, every time)

This is a ظَرْفٌ, and enters upon مَاضٍ فِعْلٌ. It also conveys the meaning of emphasis and repetition.

e.g. كَلَّمَا مَرَضْتُ دَهَبْتُ إِلَى الطَّيِّبِ Whenever I fell sick, I went to the doctor.

- ii. إِذَا (when)

This is also a ظَرْفٌ, and is used to give the meaning of فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ. It also entails the meaning of condition (مُتَضَيِّنٌ مَعْنَى الشَّرْطِ).

e.g. إِذَا لَقَيْتَهُ فَسَلِّمْ عَلَيْهِ When you meet him, greet him.

3. When the following *isms* are used for اسْتِفْهَامٌ (interrogative), they appear before one sentence.

مَنْ	مَا	مَتَى	أَيَّانَ	أَيْنَ	أَيُّ
مَا هَذَا	مَنْ أَنْتَ	أَيْنَ تَذْهَبُ	مَتَى تُسَافِرُ		

EXERCISE

1. Complete the following sentences with a suitable جَزَاءٌ.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| i. _____ من يصنع معروفًا | v. _____ أنى ينزل ذو العلم |
| ii. _____ ما تحف من أعمالك | vi. _____ متى تسافر |
| iii. _____ كيفما تعامل إخوانك | vii. _____ من احترام الناس |
| iv. _____ أيان يكثر فراغ الشباب | viii. _____ من يكثر كلامه |

Section 4.3.2⁶⁶

إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ – Active participle

Definition: It is an *إِسْمٌ* which indicates the one doing or undertaking an action described by the root letters. This is irrespective of its position in a sentence.

- It is created from *fi'ls* ثَلَاثِيٌّ مُجَرَّدٌ on the pattern of فَاعِلٍ. For other than *fi'ls* ثَلَاثِيٌّ مُجَرَّدٌ, it is created on the pattern of its مُضَارِعٌ by changing the حَرْفُ مُضَارِعٍ into a *meem* with a *dammah*, and giving a *kasrah* to the letter before the last.

Effect:

- It has the same effect as that of its active *fi'l* (فِعْلٌ مَعْرُوفٌ) i.e. if its فِعْلٌ is لَازِمٌ, it gives رَفْعٌ to the فَاعِلٌ; and if it is مُتَعَدِّ, it gives رَفْعٌ to the فَاعِلٌ and نَصْبٌ to the مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ.
- إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ acts only in either of the following two situations:

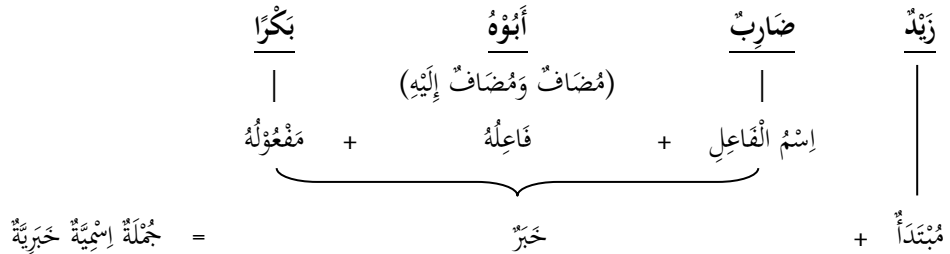
- When it is prefixed with ال.

e.g. أَنَا الشَّاكِرُ نِعْمَتَكَ I am grateful for your favor.

- When it indicates present or future tense and is preceded by مُبْتَدَأٌ or مَوْصُوفٌ or إِسْتِفْهَامٌ or نَفْيٌ. For example,

- | | | | |
|------------------|------|---|---|
| a. مُبْتَدَأٌ | e.g. | زَيْدٌ ضَارِبٌ أَبُوهُ بَكْرًا | Zayd's father is beating/will beat Bakr. |
| b. مَوْصُوفٌ | e.g. | مَرَزْتُ بِرَجُلٍ ضَارِبٍ أَبُوهُ بَكْرًا | I passed by a man whose father is beating/will beat Bakr. |
| c. إِسْتِفْهَامٌ | e.g. | أَضَارِبُ زَيْدٌ بَكْرًا؟ | Is Zayd beating Bakr?/Will Zayd beat Bakr? |
| d. نَفْيٌ | e.g. | مَا قَائِمٌ زَيْدٌ | Zayd is not standing/will not stand. |

Sentence Analysis:



⁶⁶ This section and the following sub-section are based on the discussion in *al-Nahw al-Wadiah*. See *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Thanawiyah*, vol. 2, 71-76.

Section 4.3.2.1

إِسْمُ الْمُبَالَغَةِ

Definition: It is an *إِسْمٌ* which conveys extremity/intensity in meaning.

- *إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ* is turned into the *seeghabs* of *مُبَالَغَةٌ* when exaggeration in meaning is intended.
- Some of the *wazns* of *مُبَالَغَةٌ* are as follows:

Table 4.7
أَوْزَانُ إِسْمِ الْمُبَالَغَةِ

Wazns	Examples	
	Arabic	Meaning
فَعِيلٌ	عَلِيمٌ	most learned
فَاعُولٌ	فَارُوقٌ	great distinguisher
فَعَّالٌ	ضَحَّاكٌ	someone who laughs a lot
فَعُولٌ	صَبُورٌ	very patient
فَعُولٌ	قَيُّومٌ	careful maintainer/sustainer
مِفْعِيلٌ	مِنْطَبِقٌ	very eloquent
مِفْعَالٌ	مِعْوَانٌ	someone who helps frequently

- *إِسْمُ الْمُبَالَغَةِ* does the *عَمَلٌ* of *إِسْمِ الْفَاعِلِ* with the same conditions.
e.g. يُعْجِبُنِي الشُّكْرُ الْمُنْعِمَ
The one who is very grateful to the one who does good (to him), pleases me.
إِنَّ الْجَبَانَ هَيَّابٌ لِقَاءِ الْعَدُوِّ
Indeed, the coward is very scared of meeting the enemy.

Notes:

1. The round ة at the end of some *wazns* is for *مُبَالَغَةٌ* and not for gender.

e.g. فَعَالَةٌ عَلَّامَةٌ well-learned

2. The *wazn* فَعَّالٌ is also used to denote a profession.

e.g. طَبَّاحٌ cook نَجَّارٌ carpenter

حَدَّادٌ blacksmith حَلَّاقٌ barber

EXERCISES

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and point out the effect and tense of the اِسْمُ اَلْفَاعِلِ in the following sentences.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| i. أذهب صديقنا؟ | v. ما شارب زيد القهوة |
| ii. الضارب زيد بكرا | vi. زيد شارب القهوة |
| iii. لست بجاحد فضلکم | vii. المؤمن محسن عمله |
| iv. أمنجز أنتم وعدکم؟ | viii. الطالب قارئ کتابا |

Section 4.3.3⁶⁷

إِسْمُ الْمَفْعُولِ – Passive participle

Definition: It is an *إِسْمٌ* which indicates the one upon whom an action described by the root letters is done. This is irrespective of its position in a sentence.

- It is created from *فِ'ls* ثلاثي مجرد on the pattern of مَفْعُولٌ. For other than ثلاثي مجرد, it is created on the pattern of its مُضَارِعٌ by changing the حَرْفُ مُضَارِعٍ into a *meem* with a *dammah*, and giving a *fathah* to the letter before the last.

Effect:

- It has the same effect as that of its passive *fi'l* (فَعْلٌ مَجْهُولٌ), i.e. it gives رَفْعٌ to the فَاعِلِ الرَّفْعِ.
- The rules mentioned above regarding the *إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ* also apply here.

Examples:

i. prefixed with <i>alif-laam</i>	e.g. الْمُسَمَّى هِشَامًا أَخِي	The one named Hisham is my brother.
ii. مُتَبَدِّئًا	e.g. زَيْدٌ مَضْرُوبٌ ابْنُهُ	Zayd's son is being beaten/will be beaten.
iii. مَوْصُوفٌ	e.g. مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ مَضْرُوبٍ ابْنُهُ	I passed by a man whose son is being beaten/will be beaten.
iv. اسْتَيْفَهُامُ	e.g. أَمْضْرُوبٌ زَيْدٌ؟	Is Zayd being beaten?/Will Zayd be beaten?
v. نَقْيٌ	e.g. مَا مَضْرُوبٌ زَيْدٌ	Zayd is not being beaten/will not be beaten.

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and point out the effect and tense of the *إِسْمُ الْمَفْعُولِ* in the following sentences.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| i. زيد مسموع خبره | iv. الفقير معطى ثوباً |
| ii. خالد معلم ابنه الحياكة | v. الكتاب متقن طبعه |
| iii. العلم معروفة فوائده | vi. الأشجار مقطوعة أغصانها |

⁶⁷ This section is based on the discussion in *al-Nahw al-Wadih*. See *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Thanawiyah*, vol 2, 77-82.

Section 4.3.4⁶⁸

إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ – An adjective that is similar to الصِّفَةُ الْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِاسْمِ الْفَاعِلِ

Definition: It is an *إِسْمٌ* which is created from the *مَصْدَرٌ* of a *الْأَلَاظِمُ الثَّلَاثِيُّ* (three-letter intransitive *fi'l*) to indicate permanent existence of the meaning in the doer.

- Like its *فِعْلٌ لَازِمٌ*, it generally gives the *رَفْعٌ* *فَاعِلٍ*.
e.g. *حَسَنٌ وَجْهُهُ* His face is beautiful.
- It conveys permanency of meaning in the object it relates to e.g. *حَسَنٌ* (beautiful) is a permanent quality, as compared to *إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ* which indicates a temporary meaning e.g. *ضَارِبٌ* is a temporary quality which exists only at the time of the action.
- All such *isms* which are derived from a *الْأَلَاظِمُ الثَّلَاثِيُّ* (three-letter intransitive *fi'l*) and convey the meaning of *إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ* but are not on the *wazn* of *إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ*, are *صِفَةٌ مُشَبَّهَةٌ*.

Some of the common *wazns* of *صِفَةٌ مُشَبَّهَةٌ* (based on usage) are given below

Table 4.8
أَوْزَانُ الصِّفَةِ الْمُشَبَّهَةِ

<i>Wazns</i>	Examples	
	Arabic	Meaning
فَعْلٌ	فَرِحَ	happy
فَعْلٌ	حَسَنَ	beautiful
فَعِيلٌ	شَرِيفٌ	noble/honorable
فَعَالٌ	جَبَانَ	coward
فُعَالٌ	شُجَاعٌ	brave

- Colors and bodily defects appear on the following *wazns*:

أَفْعَالٌ	(masculine)	e.g.	أَحْمَرٌ	red
			أَبْكَمٌ	mute
فَعْلَاءٌ	(feminine)	e.g.	حَمْرَاءٌ	red
			بَكْمَاءٌ	mute

⁶⁸ For more details, examples, and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Thanawiyyah*, vol. 2, 83-91.

- The *صِفَةُ مُشَبَّهَةٍ* of non-three letter *fi'ls* (عَيْرُ الثَّلَاثِي الْمَجْرَدِ) is on the *wazn* of its *إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ* on the condition that permanency of meaning is intended.
e.g. مُسْتَقِيمٌ straight

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab*, and identify all the *صِفَةُ مُشَبَّهَةٍ* in the following passage.

كان هارون الرشيد فصيحاً كريماً، هماماً ورعاً، يحج سنة ويغزو سنة وكان أديباً فطناً، حافظاً للقرآن، سليم الذوق، صحيح التمييز، جريئاً في الحق، مهيباً عند الخاصة والعامة، وكان طلق الحيا، يحب الشعراء ويعطيهم العطاء الجزيل ويدي منه أهل الأدب والدين، ويتواضع للعلماء.

2. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and identify the *seeghabs* of *مُبَالَغَةٌ* and *إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ*.

قال حكيم: المؤمن صبور شكور لا تمام ولا حسود ولا حفود ولا محتال. يطلب من الخيرات أعلاها ومن الأخلاق أسناها. لا يرد سائلاً ولا يبخل بمال، متواصل المهتم، مترادف الإحسان، وزان لكلامه، خزان للسانه، محسن عمله، مكتر في الحق أمله، ليس بهياب عند الفزع ولا وثاب عند الطمع، مواس للفقراء، رحيم بالضعفاء.

Section 4.3.5⁶⁹

إِسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ – Comparative and superlative *isms*

Definition: It is an *إِسْمٌ* which indicates that a quality described by the root letters is found to a greater extent in one person/thing when compared to another.

e.g. خَالِدٌ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ عَمْرٍو Khalid is older/bigger than ‘Amr.

It can also refer to the highest degree (superlative) of the quality described by the root letters.

e.g. اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ Allah is the greatest.

Note: This is the case when it is used without *مِنْ*, i.e. without comparison.

Table 4.9

أَوْزَانُ إِسْمِ التَّفْضِيلِ

	Masculine	Example	Feminine	Example	Meaning
Singular	أَفْعَلٌ	أَكْبَرُ	فُعْلَى	كُبْرَى	Bigger/older
Dual	أَفْعَلَانِ	أَكْبَرَانِ	فُعْلَيَانِ	كُبْرَيَانِ	Bigger/older
Plural	أَفْعَلُونَ	أَكْبَرُونَ	فُعْلَيَاتٌ	كُبْرَيَاتٌ	Bigger/older
	أَفَاعِلُ	أَكَابِرُ	فُعَلٌ	كُبرٌ	Bigger/older

Usage:

إِسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ is used in three ways.

1. With *مِنْ*: the *إِسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ* will always be a singular masculine (وَاحِدٌ مُذَكَّرٌ).

e.g. زَيْدٌ أَعْلَمُ مِنْ بَكْرٍ Zayd is more knowledgeable than Bakr.
عَائِشَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ زَيْنَبَ ‘Aishah is older than Zaynab.

2. With *ال*: the *إِسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ* must correspond with the word before it in gender and number.

e.g. الرَّيْدَانِ الْأَعْلَمَانِ غَائِبَانِ The two more knowledgeable Zayds are absent.
عَائِشَةُ الْكُبْرَى حَاضِرَةٌ The older ‘Aishah is present.

3. With *إِصَافَةٌ*: the *إِسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ* may be *وَاحِدٌ مُذَكَّرٌ* or it may correspond with the word before it.

e.g. الرَّيْدُونَ أَعْلَمُ الْقَوْمِ The Zayds are the most knowledgeable of people.

⁶⁹ For more details, examples, and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Thanawiyyah*, vol. 2, 92-100.

الرَّيْدَانِ أَعْلَمَا الْقَوْمِ الرَّيْدَانِ أَعْلَمُ الْقَوْمِ

The two Zayds are the most knowledgeable of people.

عَائِشَةُ كُبْرَى النَّاسِ عَائِشَةُ أَكْبَرُ النَّاسِ

'Aishah is the oldest of people.

Notes:

1. *إِسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ* of words which indicate color, physical defects and of *فِئَلُ* الْمُجَرَّدِ is made by placing the words أَشَدُّ, أَكْثَرُ, etc. before the *مَصْدَرٌ* of that word. The *مَصْدَرٌ* will be the *مَنْصُوبٌ*, and therefore, will be *مَمِيَّزٌ*.

- e.g. هُوَ أَشَدُّ حُمْرَةً مِنْ زَيْدٍ He is redder than Zayd.
 هُوَ أَشَدُّ عَرَجًا مِنْ زَيْدٍ He is lamer than Zayd.
 هُوَ أَكْثَرُ اجْتِهَادًا مِنْ زَيْدٍ He is more hard-working than Zayd.

2. The words *شَرٌّ* and *حَيْرٌ* are also used for *إِسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ*.

- e.g. الظَّالِمُ شَرُّ النَّاسِ The oppressor is the worst of people.

3. *إِسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ* gives *رَفْعٌ* to its hidden *ضَمِيرٌ*.

- e.g. زَيْدٌ أَفْضَلُ مِنْ بَكْرٍ Zayd is more virtuous than Bakr.
 The *dameer* هُوَ in أَفْضَلُ is its *فَاعِلٌ*.

EXERCISE

1. Translate, fill in the *i'raab* and explain the usage of *إِسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ* in the following sentences.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| i. بعض الحيوانات أقوى من الإنسان | v. النساء الفضليات |
| ii. الأنبياء أفضل الناس | vi. الأنبياء أفاضل الناس |
| iii. مريم فضلى النساء | vii. الرجال الأفاضل |
| iv. أولئك هم خير البرية | viii. ثوبك أشد سوادا من ثوبي |

Section 4.3.6⁷⁰

المَصْدَرُ – Infinitive/verbal *ism*

Definition: It is an *إِسْمٌ* which refers to the action indicated by the corresponding *fi'l* without any reference to time. It is the root of all derived words (مُسْتَنْقَاتٌ).

Effect: It has the same effect as that of its *فِعْلٌ* i.e. it gives رَفْعٌ to the فَاعِلٌ and نَصْبٌ to the مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ.

e.g. رَأَيْتُ ضَرْباً الْيَوْمَ زَيْدٌ بَكْرًا Today, I saw Zayd's beating of Bakr.

Usage:

Masdar is generally used in one of the following two ways:

- as a مُضَافٌ to its فَاعِلٌ.
e.g. كَرِهْتُ ضَرْبَ زَيْدٍ بَكْرًا i.e. (أَنْ يَضْرِبَ زَيْدٌ بَكْرًا) I disliked Zayd's beating of Bakr.
- as a مُضَافٌ to its مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ.
e.g. كَرِهْتُ ضَرْبَ بَكْرٍ زَيْدٌ i.e. (أَنْ يَضْرِبَ بَكْرًا زَيْدٌ) I disliked Zayd's beating of Bakr.

EXERCISE

1. Fill in the *i'raab* and explain the usage of the *masdar* in the following sentences.

- i. سَرِنِي قِرَاءَةَ رَشِيدِ الْقُرْآنِ
- ii. حَبِكِ الشَّيْءَ يَعْصِي وَيَصْمِ
- iii. إِكْرَامِ الْعَرَبِ الضَّعِيفِ مَعْرُوفٍ
- iv. وَلِلَّهِ عَلَى النَّاسِ حُجُّ الْبَيْتِ مِنْ اسْتِطَاعٍ إِلَيْهِ سَبِيلًا

⁷⁰ For more details, examples, and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Thanawiyyah*, vol. 2, 52-70.

Section 4.3.7⁷¹

المُضَافُ

In the case of مُضَافٌ, it is assumed that one of the following prepositions (حُرُوفُ جَرِّ) is hidden between the مُضَافٌ and مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ.

- مِنْ when the مُضَافٌ is a part/type (جِنْسٌ) of the مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ.
e.g. حَاتَمٌ مِنْ فِضَّةٍ i.e. حَاتَمٌ مِنْ فِضَّةٍ silver ring
- فِي when the مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ is a ظَرْفٌ.
e.g. صَلَاةٌ اللَّيْلِ i.e. صَلَاةٌ فِي اللَّيْلِ night prayer
- لِ when it is neither of the above two.
e.g. ابْنُ زَيْدٍ i.e. ابْنُ لَزَيْدٍ Zayd's son

Section 4.3.8

الْإِسْمُ التَّامُّ

Definition: It is an إِسْمٌ which gives the *ism* (تَمَيُّزٌ) after it a *nasb*.

- An إِسْمٌ will be considered as تَامٌّ when it has one of the following:
 - a. *tanween*.
e.g. مَا فِي السَّمَاءِ قَدْرُ رَاحَةٍ سَحَابًا (رَاحَةٍ)
There is not even a palm's measure of clouds in the sky.
 - b. hidden *tanween*.
e.g. مَعِيَ أَحَدٌ وَعَشْرٌ رِجَالًا (أَحَدٌ وَعَشْرٌ was originally أَحَدٌ وَعَشْرٌ)
There are eleven men with me.
 - c. إِسْمٌ of a dual ن.
e.g. عِنْدِي قَفَيزَانِ بُرًّا (قَفَيزَانِ)
I have two *qafeezes*⁷² of wheat.
 - d. ن which resembles the ن of a sound masculine plural (جَمْعٌ مُذَكَّرٌ سَالِمٌ).
e.g. عِنْدِي عِشْرُونَ دِرْهَمًا (عِشْرُونَ)
I have twenty *dirhams*.

The إِسْمُ التَّامُّ in the above examples cannot be مُضَافٌ while having a *tanween* or having a *noon* of dual/plural, thus the إِسْمٌ after it gets a نَصْبٌ because of it being تَمَيُّزٌ.

⁷¹ For more details, examples, and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadih, Thanawiyah*, vol. 1, 131-141.

⁷² A *qafeez* is a classical Islamic measure of volume. According to the Hanafis, it is equal to 40.344 litres.

Section 4.3.9⁷³

الْكِنَايَاتُ

Definition: It is an *ism* which indicates an unspecified quantity.

- It is clarified by the *ism* following it.
- These are *كَمْ* and *كَذَا*.

كَمْ: can be used in two ways: as an interrogative (*اِسْتِفْهَامٌ*) or as an informative exclamation (*حَيْرِيَّةٌ*).

1. *كَمْ* اِلِسْتِفْهَامِيَّةٌ – (how many)

- It gives the *ism* (*تَمَيُّزٌ*) after it a *نَصْبٌ*.
- The *تَمَيُّزٌ* is singular.

e.g. *كَمْ كِتَابًا عِنْدَكَ* How many books do you have?

- At times, the preposition *مِنْ* appears before the *تَمَيُّزٌ*.

e.g. *كَمْ مِنْ كِتَابٍ عِنْدَكَ* How many books do you have?

2. *كَمْ* اَلْحَيْرِيَّةُ – (so many)

- It gives the *ism* (*تَمَيُّزٌ*) after it a *جَرٌّ* (because of it being a *مُضَافٌ اِلَيْهِ*).
- The *تَمَيُّزٌ* may be singular or plural.

e.g. *كَمْ مَالٍ اَنْفَقْتَ* So much of wealth you have spent!

e.g. *كَمْ اَمْوَالٍ اَنْفَقْتَ* So much of wealths you have spent!

- At times the preposition *مِنْ* appears before the *تَمَيُّزٌ*.

e.g. *كَمْ مِنْ مَلَكٍ فِي السَّمَوَاتِ* There are so many angels in the skies/heavens!

كَذَا – (so much, such and such)

- It gives the *ism* (*تَمَيُّزٌ*) after it a *nasb*.
- The *تَمَيُّزٌ* is singular.

e.g. *عِنْدِي كَذَا دِرْهَمًا* I have this much *dirhams*.

EXERCISE

1. What is the difference between the following sentences.

i. *كَمْ كِتَابًا قَرَأْتُ*

ii. *كَمْ كِتَابٍ قَرَأْتُ*

⁷³ For more details, examples, and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Thanawiyyah*, vol. 2, 170-173.

Section 4.4

أَلْحُرُوفُ الْعَمَلِ – Non-governing particles

1. حُرُوفُ التَّنْبِيهِ – Particles of notification:

These are used to draw the attention of the listener. These are as follows:

أَلَا أَمَا هَا meaning Lo! / Behold! / Take heed!

e.g. أَلَا إِنَّ نَصْرَ اللَّهِ قَرِيبٌ Behold! Indeed, Allah's help is near.

أَمَا زَيْدٌ نَائِمٌ Behold! Zayd is sleeping.

هَذَا أَنَا حَاضِرٌ Lo! I am present.

هَذَا This

Note: The actual إِشَارَةٌ is only دَا, while هَا is the حَرْفُ تَنْبِيهِ. However, in common usage the whole is referred to as إِشَارَةٌ without differentiating.

2. حُرُوفُ الْإِيجَابِ – Particles of affirmation:⁷⁴

These are used for affirmation of a statement made earlier. These are as follows:

إِنَّ جَيْرَ أَجَانَ إِي بَلَى نَعَمْ

نَعَمْ – (yes)

- It is used to confirm a statement, be it positive or negative. For example,
 - If someone says أَجَاءَ زَيْدٌ؟ (Did Zayd come?), the reply will be نَعَمْ (yes) meaning جَاءَ زَيْدٌ (Zayd came.).
 - If someone says أَمَا جَاءَ زَيْدٌ؟ (Has Zayd not come?), the reply will be نَعَمْ (yes) meaning مَا جَاءَ زَيْدٌ (Zayd did not come.).

بَلَى – (yes, why not)

- It is used to convert a negative statement into a positive one.
e.g. If someone says أَلَمْ يَسْتَقِمْ زَيْدٌ؟ (Did Zayd not stand up?), the reply will be بَلَى (yes, why not) meaning قَامَ زَيْدٌ (Zayd has stood up.).

إِي – (yes)

- It is the same as نَعَمْ. However it is used with an oath (فَسَمٌ) after a question.
e.g. If someone says أَقَامَ زَيْدٌ؟ (Did Zayd stand up?), the reply will be إِي وَاللَّهِ (yes, by Allah!) meaning قَامَ زَيْدٌ (Zayd stood up.).

⁷⁴ For more examples and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Ibtida'iyah*, vol. 3, 168-174.

(yes) – إِنَّ / جَيْرُ / أَجَلُ

- These have the same meaning as نَعَمْ.

e.g. If someone says أَجَاءَ زَيْدٌ؟ (Did Zayd come?), the reply will be إِنَّ or جَيْرُ or أَجَلُ (yes) meaning جَاءَ زَيْدٌ (Zayd came.).

Note: إِنَّ is very rarely used for this purpose.

3. حُرُوفُ التَّفْسِيرِ – Particles of clarification:

These are used to clarify a word in a sentence. These are as follows:

أَيُّ أَنْ (that is)

e.g. واسْئَلِ الْقَرْيَةَ أَيُّ أَهْلِ الْقَرْيَةِ And ask the town, that is, the people of the town.

 وَنَادَيْنَاهُ أَنْ يَا إِبْرَاهِيمَ And We called him, that is, O Ibraheem!

4. حُرُوفُ الْمَصْدَرِيَّةِ: These are used to give a *masdari* meaning. These are as follows:

مَا أَنْ أَنَّ

- مَا and أَنَّ come before a جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ.

- أَنَّ comes before a جُمْلَةٌ إِسْمِيَّةٌ.

e.g. (بِرُحْبِهَا) حَتَّى إِذَا ضَاقَتْ عَلَيْهِمُ الْأَرْضُ بِمَا رَحُبَتْ

 Until when the earth became straitened for them despite its vastness.

 بِصِدْقِكَ (صِدْقُكَ) Your truthfulness pleases me.

 بَلَّغَنِي أَنَّ زَيْدًا نَائِمٌ (نَوْمُ زَيْدٍ) (News of) Zayd's sleeping reached me.

Note: أَنَّ and أَنْ are governing particles.

5. حُرُوفُ التَّحْضِيضِ – Particles of exhortation:

These are used to encourage someone to do something when they appear before فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ.

These are as follows:

لَوْ مَا لَوْلَا هَلَّا أَلَا

e.g. هَلَّا تُصَلِّي؟ Do you not pray *salah*?

- These particles are also used to create regret and sorrow in the listener when they appear before فِعْلٌ مَاضٍ. Therefore, they are also called حُرُوفُ التَّنْدِيمِ.

e.g. هَلَّا صَلَّيْتَ الْعَصْرَ؟ Have you not prayed 'Asr *salah*?

e.g. وَلَوْلَا إِذْ سَمِعْتُمُوهُ قُلْتُمْ... When you heard it, why did you not say...

6. حَرْفُ التَّوَقُّعِ – Particle of anticipation:⁷⁵

This is قَدْ. An example of its usage for تَوَقُّعٌ is as follows.

قَدْ يَفْدُمُ الْعَائِبُ الْيَوْمَ Probably, the absent person will return today.

- Besides تَوَقُّعٌ, قَدْ can also be used for one or more of the following. These are all more common than its usage for تَوَقُّعٌ.

تَقْرِيْبٌ: In this case, it gives فِعْلٌ مَّاضٍ the meaning of near past. This usage is specific to فِعْلٌ مَّاضٍ.

e.g. قَدْ جَاءَ زَيْدٌ Zayd has arrived (recently).

تَقْلِيْلٌ: In this case, it gives فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ the meaning of seldomness. This usage is specific to فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ.

e.g. إِنَّ الْجَوَادَ قَدْ يَبْخُلُ Indeed, sometimes, a generous person is miserly.

تَحْقِيْقٌ: In this case, it gives فِعْلٌ مَّاضٍ or فِعْلٌ مُضَارِعٌ the meaning of certainty.

e.g. قَدْ جَاءَ زَيْدٌ Certainly, Zayd came.

 قَدْ يَعْلَمُ اللَّهُ Certainly, Allah knows.

- قَدْ can also be used simultaneously for more than one of the above-mentioned purposes. An example of قَدْ being simultaneously used for تَوَقُّعٌ, تَقْرِيْبٌ, and تَحْقِيْقٌ, is as follows:

قَدْ قَامَتِ الصَّلَاةُ Indeed, *salah* has been established/is about to be established.

Note: لَعَلَّ can also be used for تَوَقُّعٌ.

7. حَرْفَا الْاِسْتِفْهَامِ – Particles of interrogation:⁷⁶

These are هَلْ and أَ.

e.g. أَرَيْتَ قَائِمًا؟ Is Zayd standing?

 هَلْ قَامَ زَيْدٌ؟ Did Zayd stand up?

⁷⁵ This is based on *Mu'jam al-Qawa'id al-'Arabiyyah*. See *Mu'jam al-Qawa'id al-'Arabiyyah*, 338-339.

⁷⁶ For more examples, and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadiah, Ibtida'iyyah*, vol. 3, 168-171.

8. حَرْفُ الرَّدِّعِ – Particle of rebuke:

This is كَلَّا, which means “Never!”

- It can be used to rebuke or reprimand.
e.g. كَلَّا said in response to someone who says إِضْرِبْ زَيْدًا (Hit Zayd.).
- It can also be used to convey the meaning of certainty.
e.g. كَلَّا سَوْفَ تَعْلَمُونَ Indeed, soon you will know.

Note: This is according to one translation. According to another, it is in the meaning of “never.”

9. التَّنْوِينُ: It is used for one or more of the following:

تَمَكُّنٌ: It is a *tanween* which shows an *ism* to be مُعْرَبٌ.

e.g. زَيْدٌ

تَنْكِيرٌ: It is a *tanween* which shows an *ism* to be نَكِيرٌ.

e.g. رَجُلٌ

تَعْوِضٌ: It is a *tanween* which substitutes a إِلَيْهِ.

e.g. يَوْمَئِذٍ i.e. يَوْمَ إِذَا كَانَ كَذَا the day when such and such happens

10. نُونُ التَّأْكِيدِ: It is used for emphasis in مُضَارِعٌ, أَمْرٌ and هَيِّ. It is of two forms: ثَقِيلَةٌ and خَفِيفَةٌ.

Both have the same meaning.

الثَّقِيلَةُ (ن)

الخَفِيفَةُ (ن)

لَيَضْرِبَنَّ

لَيَضْرِبَنَّ

Indeed, he should hit.

أَنْصُرَنَّ

أَنْصُرَنَّ

You must help.

11. حَرْفُ لَ: It can be used for the following:

إِتِّدَاءٌ: It appears before the مُبْتَدَأٌ and is used for emphasis.

e.g. لَأَنْتُمْ أَشَدُّ رَهْبَةً Indeed, you are more feared.

جَوَابٌ: It comes in the answer to لَوْ – لَوْ لَا and فَسَمَّ.

e.g. وَلَوْ لَا دَفَعُ اللَّهُ النَّاسَ بَعْضَهُمْ بِبَعْضٍ لَفَسَدَتِ الْأَرْضُ

If Allah did not repel some people by means of others, the earth would be corrupted.

وَاللَّهِ لَأَصُومَنَّ غَدًا

By Allah! I will fast tomorrow.

زَائِدَةٌ: This is extra and can be used for emphasis.

e.g. إِنَّهُمْ لَيَأْكُلُونَ الطَّعَامَ Indeed, they eat food.

12. أَحْرُوفُ الرَّائِدَةِ – **Extra particles:** These are not translated. However, they add beauty and emphasis to the meaning. They may also stop the effect (عَمَلٌ) of an عَامِلٌ. These are:

(عَامِلَةٌ – مِنْ، كَ، بَ) مِنْ لَ لَا مَا أَنْ إِنَّ

Usage:

إِنَّ: It appears after مَا النَّافِيَةُ.

e.g. مَا إِنَّ زَيْدًا قَائِمٌ Zayd is not standing.

أَنَّ: It appears after لَمَّا.

e.g. فَلَمَّا أَنَّ جَاءَ الْبَشِيرُ When the bearer of good news came.

مَا: It appears after the following:

إِذَا e.g. إِذَا مَا ابْتُلَيْتَ فَاصْبِرْ When you are afflicted, be patient.

مَتَى e.g. مَتَى مَا تُسَافِرُ أُسَافِرُ When you travel, I will travel.

أَيُّ e.g. أَيُّمَا الرَّجُلِ جَاءَكَ فَأَكْرِمْهُ Whoever comes to you, treat him hospitably.

Here, مَا blocked the عَمَلُ of أَيُّ.

أَيْنَ e.g. أَيِّنَمَا تَوَلَّوْا فَتَمَّ وَجْهُ اللَّهِ Whichever way you turn, there is the face of Allah.

إِنَّ e.g. فَإِنَّمَا يَأْتِيَنَّكُمْ مِنِّي هُدًى Then, should some guidance come to you from Me.

حَرْفُ جَرٍّ e.g. فَبِمَا رَحْمَةٍ مِّنَ اللَّهِ لِنْتَ لَهُمْ So, it is through mercy from Allah that you are gentle to them.

Here, مَا did not block the عَمَلُ of حَرْفُ جَرٍّ.

لَا e.g. لَا أُقْسِمُ بِهَذَا الْبَلَدِ I swear by this city.

لَ e.g. إِنَّهُمْ لَيَأْكُلُونَ الطَّعَامَ Indeed, they eat food.

مِنْ e.g. هَلْ مِنْ خَالِقٍ غَيْرُ اللَّهِ؟ Is there a creator besides Allah?

كَ e.g. لَيْسَ كَمِثْلِهِ شَيْءٌ There is nothing like Him.

بِ e.g. لَيْسَ زَيْدٌ بِكَاذِبٍ Zayd is not a liar.

13. حُرُوفُ الشَّرْطِ الَّتِي لَا تَجْزِمُ – Conditional particles that do not cause *jazm*:⁷⁷

أَمَّا (however, as for, as far as...is concerned)

- It is used to explain/clarify something, which was mentioned briefly.
- ف should be used before its answer (جَوَابٌ).

e.g. فَمِنْهُمْ شَقِيٌّ وَسَعِيدٌ فَأَمَّا الَّذِينَ شَفَعُوا فِي النَّارِ

So, some of them will be wretched and (some) blessed. As for the wretched, they will be in the Fire.

لَوْ (if)

- It is used to negate the second sentence (جَوَابٌ) on account of the first sentence (شَرْطٌ) not being fulfilled.

e.g. لَوْ كَانَ فِيهِمَا آلِهَةٌ إِلَّا اللَّهُ لَفَسَدَتَا

If there had been gods besides Allah in them (the heavens and the earth), they would have been corrupted.
(There will not be corruption because more than one god does not exist.)

Note: If a وَ is added to لَوْ i.e. وَلَوْ, it will give the meaning of “even if/even though” and will be known as لَوْ وَصَلِيَّةٌ.

e.g. أَوْ لِمَ وَ لَوْ بِشَاةٍ Celebrate *walimah* even if it be with one (slaughtered) goat.

لَوْ مَا and لَوْ مَا (if such and such had not been so, ...)

- Apart from being used for تَحْضِيضٌ and تَنْدِيمٌ, they are also used to demonstrate that the second sentence (جَوَابٌ) cannot be attained because of the presence of the condition of the first sentence (شَرْطٌ).

e.g. لَوْلَا زَيْدٌ لَهْلَكَ بَكْرٌ Had it not been for Zayd, Bakr would have perished.

لَمَّا (when)

- This is a ظَرْفٌ in the meaning of حِينَ. It enters upon فِعْلٌ مَاضٍ.

e.g. لَمَّا سَلَّمْتُ عَلَيْهِ رَدَّ عَلَيَّ السَّلَامَ When I greeted him, he returned my greeting.

⁷⁷ For more details, examples, and exercises, please refer to *al-Nahw al-Wadib, Thanawiyyah*, vol. 2, 43-48.

14. مَا (مَا دَامَ): It is a مَا which has the meaning of مَا دَامَ (as long as).

e.g. أَقُومُ مَا جَلَسَ الْأَمِيرُ i.e. أَقُومُ مَا دَامَ الْأَمِيرُ جَالِسًا

I will stand as long as the leader is sitting.

15. حُرُوفُ الْعَطْفِ: These have been discussed in Section 3.10.4

FINAL EXERCISE

Q: Go through the whole book and identify the various meanings and uses of the following:

أَنَّ إِنَّ لَ أَيَّ أَيَّانَ أَيْنَ مَنَى لَمَّا مَنَ مَا لَا
حَتَّى فِ وَ أَنَّ

فَالْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي بِنِعْمَتِهِ تَتِمُّ الصَّالِحَاتُ
وَالصَّلَاةُ وَالسَّلَامُ عَلَى رَسُولِهِ الْكَرِيمِ وَعَلَى آلِهِ الطَّيِّبِينَ الطَّاهِرِينَ وَعَلَى أَصْحَابِهِ أَجْمَعِينَ

APPENDIX

Studying Classical/Qur'anic Arabic

There are a number of options available for the student of sacred Islamic knowledge seeking to learn classical Arabic on his/her path to learning the *deen*. The following is a set of suggested curricula for studying Arabic language, based upon the South Asian (Indo-Paki) scholarly tradition. It is by no means the only option. To begin with, Urdu texts have been omitted. Moreover, those following other scholarly traditions (Arab, Turkish, South East Asian) may have a somewhat different set of books, although they will also find some overlap here.

The books whose names are only mentioned in English are English texts, while those whose Arabic names are also given are Arabic texts. The texts increase in difficulty and advancement downward.

General Arabic Language

Level	Texts		
Beginner to Intermediate	<i>Durus al-Lughah al-'Arabiyyah</i> vols. 1-3 (دُرُوسُ اللُّغَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ) OR <i>Al-'Arabiyyah Bayna Yadayka</i> vols. 1-3 (الْعَرَبِيَّةُ بَيْنَ يَدَيْكَ)	<i>Arabic Tutor</i> vols. 1-2	<i>Ten Lessons of Arabic</i>

Nahw

Level	Texts
Beginner to Intermediate	<i>Tasheel al-Nahw</i>
	<i>Sharh Mi'at 'Amil</i> (شَرْحُ مِائَةِ عَامِلٍ) OR <i>'Awamil al-Nahw</i> (عَوَامِلُ النَّحْوِ)
	<i>Hidayat al-Nahw</i> (هِدَايَةُ النَّحْوِ) OR <i>Al-Ajurrumiyah</i> (الْأَجْرُومِيَّةُ) with commentary <i>al-Tuhfah al-Saniyyah</i> (التُّحْفَةُ السَّنِيَّةُ)
	<i>Al-Kafiyah</i> (الْكَافِيَّةُ)
	<i>Sharh ibn 'Aqil</i> (شَرْحُ ابْنِ عَقِيلٍ) OR <i>Sharh Jami</i> (شَرْحُ الْجَامِيِّ) OR <i>Sharh Qatr al-Nada wa Ball al-Sada</i> (شَرْحُ قَطْرِ النَّدَى وَبَلِّ الصَّدَى) OR <i>Sharh Shudhur al-Dhahab</i> (شَرْحُ شُدُورِ الدَّهَبِ)

The texts *al-Nahw al-Wadiah li al-Madaris al-Ibtida'iyah* vols. 1-3 (النَّحْوُ الْوَاضِحُ لِلْمَدَارِسِ الْإِبْتِدَائِيَّةِ) and *al-Nahw al-Wadiah li al-Madaris al-Thana'wiyyah* vols. 1-3 (النَّحْوُ الْوَاضِحُ لِلْمَدَارِسِ الثَّانَوِيَّةِ) belong to the intermediate to advanced level. The six volumes in general, and the three *al-Ibtida'iyah* volumes in particular, can be used in place of, or in conjunction with *Tasheel al-Nahw*. The six could also be used in conjunction with *Hidayat al-Nahw*. Almost always, one of these texts has something that the other does not.

Sarf

Level	Texts
Beginner	<i>Fundamentals of Classical Arabic</i> vol. 1
Intermediate	<i>From the Treasures of Arabic Morphology</i>
	<i>Ilm al-Seeghah</i> (عِلْمُ الصِّيغَةِ) OR <i>Shadha al-'Arf fi Fann al-Sarf</i> (شَدَا الْعَرْفِ فِي فَنِّ الصَّرْفِ)

Arabic Reading/Literature

Level	Texts
Beginner	<i>Al-Qira'ah al-Rashidah</i> vol. 1 (الْقِرَاءَةُ الرَّاشِدَةُ) <i>Qasas al-Nabiyyin</i> vol. 1 (قَصَصُ النَّبِيِّينَ)
	<i>Qasas al-Nabiyyin</i> vol. 2 (قَصَصُ النَّبِيِّينَ)
	<i>Qasas al-Nabiyyin</i> vol. 3 (قَصَصُ النَّبِيِّينَ)
Intermediate	<i>Al-Qira'ah al-Rashidah</i> vol. 2 (الْقِرَاءَةُ الرَّاشِدَةُ) <i>Qasas al-Nabiyyin</i> vol. 4 (قَصَصُ النَّبِيِّينَ)
	<i>Nafhat al-'Arab</i> (نَفْحَةُ الْعَرَبِ) <i>Qasas al-Nabiyyin</i> vol. 5 (قَصَصُ النَّبِيِّينَ)
Advanced	<i>Mukhtarat min Adab al-'Arab</i> vol. 1 (مُخْتَارَاتٌ مِنْ أَدَبِ الْعَرَبِ)
	<i>Mukhtarat min Adab al-'Arab</i> vol. 2 (مُخْتَارَاتٌ مِنْ أَدَبِ الْعَرَبِ) <i>Al-Maqamat al-Haririyyah</i> (الْمَقَامَاتُ الْحَرِيرِيَّةُ)

Arabic Rhetoric (*Balaghah*)

Level	Texts
Beginner	<i>Durus al-Balaghah</i> (دُرُوسُ الْبَلَاغَةِ)
Intermediate to Advanced	<i>Al-Balaghah al-Wadiah</i> (الْبَلَاغَةُ الْوَاضِحَةُ)
	<i>Talkhees al-Miftah</i> (تَلْخِيصُ الْمِفْتَاحِ) OR its commentary <i>Mukhtasar al-Ma'ani</i> (مُخْتَصَرُ الْمَعَانِي)

Suggested Curriculum

Below, we have provided a suggested curriculum based upon some of the texts given above that could be followed as part of an overall traditional Arabic & Islamic Studies curriculum. This curriculum is based on a two-semester academic year.

Year	Sem	Texts				
1	1	<i>Ten Lessons of Arabic</i>		<i>Fundamentals</i> vol. 1	<i>Durus al-Lughah</i> vol. 1	
	2	<i>Tasheel al-Nahw</i> (using <i>Al-Nahw al-Wadih Ibtida'iyah</i> & <i>Thanawiyyah</i> for reference/examples)		<i>Treasures of Arabic Morphology</i>	<i>Durus al-Lughah</i> vol. 1 (continued if not completed, followed by vol. 2)	<i>Arabic Tutor</i> vol. 1 <i>Qasas al-Nabiyyin</i> vols. 1 & 2
2	1	<i>Tasheel al-Nahw</i> (continued, if not yet completed) followed by selected readings & exercises from <i>al-Nahw al-Wadih Ibtida'iyah</i> & <i>Thanawiyyah</i>		<i>Treasures of Arabic Morphology</i> (continued)	<i>Durus al-Lughah</i> vol. 2 (continued if not yet completed, followed by vol. 3)	<i>Arabic Tutor</i> vol. 1 (continued if not yet completed, followed by vol. 2) <i>Qasas al-Nabiyyin</i> vols. 3 & 4
	2	<i>Hidayat al-Nahw</i>	<i>'Awaamil al-Nahw</i> OR <i>Sharh Mi'at 'Aamil</i>	<i>Ilm al-Seeghah</i>		<i>Nafhat al-'Arab</i> <i>Qasas al-Nabiyyin</i> vol. 5
3	1	<i>Sharh ibn 'Aqil</i> vol. 1		<i>Durus al-Balaghah</i>		<i>Mukhtarat</i> vol. 1
	2			<i>Durus al-Balaghah</i> (continued, if not yet completed) followed by selected readings from <i>Talkhees al-Miftah</i> OR its commentary <i>Mukhtasar al-Ma'ani</i>		

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Kidwai, ‘Abd al-Salam and Aamir Bashir. (2016). *Ten Lessons of Arabic*. Chicago: Dār al-Sa‘ādah Publications.
- ‘Abd al-Ghaniyy al-Daqr. (1986). *Mu‘jam al-Qawa‘id al-‘Arabiyyah fi al-Nahw wa al-Tasreef* [Handbook of Arabic Grammar Rules]. Damascus: Dar al-Qalam.
- ‘Abd al-Majid Nadvi. (n.d.). Vol. 1, *Mu‘allim al-Insha’* [Composition Tutor]. Karachi: Majlis Nashriat-e-Islam.
- ‘Abd al-Rahman al-Fawzan, Mukhtar Husayn & Muhammad ‘Abd al-Khaliq. (2007). *Al-‘Arabiyyah bayna Yadayk* [Arabic Before You] (Vols. 1-3). Riyadh: Al-‘Arabiyyah li al-Jamee‘.
- ‘Abd al-Sattar Khan. (2007). *Arabic Tutor* (Vols. 1-2) (Ebrahim Muhammad, Trans.). Camperdown, South Africa: Madrasah In‘amiyyah.
- ‘Abdullah ibn ‘Aqil. (1980). *Sharh ibn ‘Aqil ‘ala Alfyyat ibn Malik* [Ibn ‘Aqil’s Commentary on *The One-thousand Verse Poem* of Ibn Malik] (Vols. 1-4). Cairo: Dar al-Turath.
- Abul Hasan ‘Ali al-Nadwi. (n.d.). *Al-Qira‘ah al-Rashidah* [The Rightly Guided Reading] (Vols. 1-2). Karachi: Majlis Nashriat-e-Islam.
- Abul Hasan ‘Ali al-Nadwi. (n.d.). *Mukhtarat min Adab al-‘Arab* [Selections from the Literature of the Arabs] (Vols. 1-2). Karachi: Majlis Nashriat-e-Islam.
- Abul Hasan ‘Ali al-Nadwi. (n.d.). *Qasas al-Nabiyyin* [Stories of the Prophets] (Vols. 1-5). Karachi: Majlis Nashriat-e-Islam.
- ‘Ali al-Jaarim & Mustafa Ameen. (n.d.). *Al-Balaghah al-Wadihah* [Clear Rhetoric]. Cairo: Dar al-Ma‘arif.
- ‘Ali al-Jaarim & Mustafa Ameen. (n.d.). *Al-Nahw al-Wadih li al-Madaris al-Ibtida‘iyyah* [Clear Grammar for Elementary Schools], (Vols. 1-3). Cairo: Dar al-Ma‘arif.
- ‘Ali al-Jaarim & Mustafa Ameen. (n.d.). *Al-Nahw al-Wadih li al-Madaris al-Thanawiyyah* [Clear Grammar for Secondary Schools], (Vols. 1-3). Cairo: Dar al-Ma‘arif.
- Al-Andalusi, ibn Hayyan. (2008). *Hidayat al-Nahw* [Guide to Grammar]. Karachi: Maktabat al-Bushra.
- Al-Ansari, Abdullah ibn Hisham. (1994). *Sharh Qatr al-Nada wa Ball al-Sada* [Commentary on *The Drops of Dew and the Moisture of Thirst*], with notes by Muhammad Muhy al-Din ‘Abd al-Hamid. Beirut: al-Maktabah al-‘Asariyyah.
- Al-Ansari, Abdullah ibn Hisham. (1990). *Sharh Shudhur al-Dhabab* [Commentary on *The Scattered Particles of Gold*]. Beirut: Maktabat Lubnan.

- Al-Hamlawi, Ahmad ibn Muhammad. (2005). Muhammad ibn ‘Abd al-Mu‘ti (ed.). *Shadha al-‘Arf fi Fann al-Sarf* [Strong Fragrance Regarding the Science of Morphology]. Riyadh: Dar al-Kayan.
- Al-Hariri, Muhammad al-Qasim ibn ‘Ali. (n.d.). *Al-Maqamat al-Haririyyah* [The Assemblies of al-Hariri]. Lahore: Maktabah Rahmaniyyah.
- Al-Jurjani, ‘Abd al-Qahir. (n.d.). *Sharh Mi‘at ‘Amil* [Commentary of Hundred Governing Words]. Karachi: Qadimi Kutubkhana.
- Al-Qazwini, Muhammad ibn ‘Abd al-Rahman. (2010). *Talkhees al-Miftah* [Summary of *The Key*]. Karachi: Maktabat al-Bushra.
- Al-Taftazani, Mas‘ood ibn ‘Umar. (2010). *Mukhtasar al-Ma‘ani* [Summary of Rhetoric]. Karachi: Maktabat al-Bushra.
- Charthawali, Mawlana Mushtaq Ahmad. (n.d.). *‘Ilm al-Nahw* [Science of Grammar]. Karachi: Altaf & Sons.
- Charthawali, Mawlana Mushtaq Ahmad. (2010). *‘Awamil al-Nahw* [Governing Words of Grammar]. Karachi: Maktabat al-Bushra.
- Docrat, Mawlana Hasan. (2003). *Tawdeeh al-Nahw: A Simplified Arabic Grammar*. Azaadville, South Africa: Madrasah Arabiah Islamia.
- Ebrahim Muhammad. (2006). *From the Treasures of Arabic Morphology*. Camperdown, South Africa: Madrasah In‘amiyyah.
- Husain Abdul Sattar. (2002). Vol. 1, *Fundamentals of Classical Arabic*. Chicago: Faqir Publications.
- Ibn al-Hajib. (2008). *Al-Kafiyah* [The Sufficient]. Karachi: Maktabat al-Bushra.
- Jami, ‘Abd al-Rahman. (2011). *Sharh al-Mulla al-Jami ‘ala al-Kafiyah* [The Commentary of Mulla Jami on *The Sufficient*]. Karachi: Maktabat al-Bushra.
- Lane, E. W. (1968). Book I, Parts 4-6, *An Arabic-English Lexicon*. Beirut: Librairie du Liban.
- Muhammad Diyab, Sultan Muhammad, et. al. (2009). *Durus al-Balaghah* [Lessons of Rhetoric]. Karachi: Maktabat al-Bushra.
- Muhammad ‘Inayat Ahmad. (n.d.). *‘Ilm al-Seeghab* [Science of Forms]. (Wali Khan al-Muzaffar, Trans.). Karachi: al-Maktabah al-Faruqiyyah.
- Muhammad I‘zaz ‘Ali. (2010). *Nafhat al-‘Arab* [Fragrance of the Arabs]. Karachi: Maktabat al-Bushra.
- Muhammad Muhy al-Din ‘Abd al-Hamid. (1989). *Al-Tuhfah al-Saniyyah bi Sharh Muqaddamat al-Ajurrumiyyah* [The Sublime Gift of Commentary on the *Ajurrumi Prolegomena*]. Cairo: Maktabat al-Sunnah
- V. ‘Abd al-Rahim. (2009). *Durus al-Lughah al-‘Arabiyyah* [Lessons of Arabic Language], (Vols. 1-3). Chennai: Islamic Foundation.